

THE  $p$ -ADIC MONODROMY GROUP OF ABELIAN VARIETIES  
OVER GLOBAL FUNCTION FIELDS OF CHARACTERISTIC  $p$

AMBRUS PÁL

ABSTRACT. We prove an analogue of the Tate isogeny conjecture and the semi-simplicity conjecture for overconvergent crystalline Dieudonné modules of abelian varieties defined over global function fields of characteristic  $p$ . As a corollary we deduce that monodromy groups of such overconvergent crystalline Dieudonné modules are reductive, and after a finite base change of coefficients their connected components are the same as the connected components of monodromy groups of Galois representations on the corresponding  $l$ -adic Tate modules, for  $l$  different from  $p$ . We also show such a result for general compatible systems incorporating overconvergent  $F$ -isocrystals, conditional on a result of Abe.

1. INTRODUCTION

Let  $U$  be a geometrically connected smooth quasi-projective curve defined over the finite field  $\mathbb{F}_q$  of characteristic  $p$ . For every perfect field  $k$  of characteristic  $p$  let  $\mathbb{W}(k)$  denote the ring of Witt vectors of  $k$  of infinite length. Let  $\mathbb{Z}_q$  and  $\mathbb{Q}_q$  denote  $\mathbb{W}(\mathbb{F}_q)$  and its fraction field, respectively. For every abelian scheme  $A$  over  $U$  let  $D^\dagger(A)$  denote the overconvergent crystalline Dieudonné module of  $A$  over  $U$  (for a construction see [23], sections 4.3–4.8). It is a  $\mathbb{Q}_q$ -linear  $F$ -isocrystal equipped with the  $p$ -power Frobenius. The first result of this paper is an easy consequence of de Jong's theorem ([12]):

**Theorem 1.1.** *Let  $A$  and  $B$  be two abelian schemes over  $U$ . Then the map:*

$$\mathrm{Hom}(A, B) \otimes \mathbb{Q}_p \xrightarrow{\alpha} \mathrm{Hom}(D^\dagger(A), D^\dagger(B))$$

*induced by the functoriality of overconvergent Dieudonné modules is an isomorphism.*

We will also give another proof of this claim by deriving it directly from Zarhin's celebrated theorem on the endomorphism of abelian varieties over function fields (see [47] and [48]) using the formidable machinery of rigid cohomology (see Chapters 6 and 7 for the details). This line of attack necessitates the development of a suitable formalism of  $p$ -adic cycle class maps and Tate's conjecture over function fields as an additional bonus, and it also gives a new, although not entirely independent proof of de Jong's theorem mentioned above. Our next result is the natural pair of the result above, analogous to the semi-simplicity of the action of the absolute Galois group on the Tate module of abelian varieties, also due to Zarhin in the function field case.

---

<sup>1</sup>2010 Mathematics Subject Classification. 14K15, 14F30, 14F35.  
Date: December 11, 2015.

**Theorem 1.2.** *Let  $A$  be an abelian scheme over  $U$ . Then the overconvergent  $F$ -isocrystal  $D^\dagger(A)$  is semi-simple.*

This claim is an easy consequence of an analogue of Deligne's semi-simplicity result for pure lisse sheaves (see Theorem 4.3.1 of [2]) and the corresponding result for abelian varieties over finite fields. However we will also give a proof using  $p$ -divisible groups closely following the methods of de Jong, Faltings and Zarhin, mainly because this argument also leads to two interesting auxiliary results; one is a useful condition for sub  $p$ -divisible groups to have semi-stable reduction (see Theorem 2.22), while the second is that the Faltings height of the quotients of a semi-stable abelian variety over a global function field by the  $p$ -primary torsion subgroup-schemes of a semi-stable sub  $p$ -divisible group is constant (see Theorem 5.5).

The second theorem can be reformulated in terms of the monodromy group of  $D^\dagger(A)$  whose construction we recall next. Let  $X$  be any connected  $\mathbb{F}_q$ -scheme and let  $F$  be the  $p$ -power Frobenius on  $X$ . Let  $F\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{Q}_q)$  denote the  $\mathbb{Q}_p$ -linear rigid tensor category of  $\mathbb{Q}_q$ -linear overconvergent  $F$ -isocrystals on  $X$ . For every object  $\mathcal{F}$  of  $F\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{Q}_q)$  let  $\langle\langle\mathcal{F}\rangle\rangle$  denote the full rigid abelian tensor subcategory of  $F\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{Q}_q)$  generated by  $\mathcal{F}$ . For every  $x : \text{Spec}(\mathbb{F}_{q^n}) \rightarrow X$  the pull-back of an  $F$ -isocrystal to  $x$  supplies a functor from the category  $F\text{-Isoc}_{\mathbb{Q}_q}^\dagger(X)$  into the category  $F\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(\text{Spec}(\mathbb{F}_{q^n})/\mathbb{Q}_q)$ . By forgetting the Frobenius structure we get a fibre functor  $\omega_x$  into the category of  $\mathbb{Q}_{q^n}$ -linear vector spaces, which makes  $F\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{Q}_q)$  into a Tannakian category (see 2.2 of [9] on page 440 for details). For every object  $\mathcal{F}$  of  $F\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{Q}_q)$  let  $\text{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, x) = \text{Aut}^\otimes(\omega_x|\langle\langle\mathcal{F}\rangle\rangle)$  denote the monodromy group of  $\mathcal{F}$  with respect to the fibre functor  $\omega_x$  (see [15], especially Proposition 3.11). It is a linear algebraic group over  $\mathbb{Q}_{q^n}$ . By the Tannakian formalism Theorem 1.2 has the following immediate

**Corollary 1.3.** *Let  $A$  be an abelian scheme over  $U$ . For every  $x \in U(\mathbb{F}_{q^n})$  the group  $\text{Gr}(D^\dagger(A), x)$  is reductive.  $\square$*

For every field  $L$  let  $\bar{L}$  denote the separable closure of  $L$ . Let  $L$  denote the function field of  $U$ , and for every  $A$  as above let  $A_L$  denote the base change of  $A$  to  $L$ . For every prime  $l$  different from  $p$  let  $T_l(A)$  denote the  $l$ -adic Tate module of  $A_L$  and let  $V_l(A) = T_l(A) \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_l} \mathbb{Q}_l$ . The absolute Galois group  $\text{Gal}(\bar{L}/L)$  acts continuously on  $V_l(A)$ ; let  $\rho_l$  denote the corresponding homomorphism  $\text{Gal}(\bar{L}/L) \rightarrow \text{Aut}(V_l(A))$ . Fix a point  $x \in U(\mathbb{F}_{q^n})$  now and let  $V_p(A)$  denote the vector space  $\omega_x(D^\dagger(A))$ . We have a representation  $\rho_p : \text{Gr}(D^\dagger(A), x) \rightarrow \text{Aut}(V_p(A))$  by definition. For every prime number  $l$  let  $G_l$  denote the Zariski closure of the image of  $\rho_l$  in  $\text{Aut}(V_l(A))$ . For every linear algebraic group  $G$  defined over a field let  $G^o$  denote its identity component. For every  $l$  as above let  $\rho_l^{\text{alg}}$  denote the representation of  $G_l^o$  on  $V_l(A)$ . For every global field  $K$  let  $|K|$  denote the set of places of  $K$  and for every  $\lambda \in |K|$  let  $K_\lambda$  denote the completion of  $K$  with respect to  $\lambda$ . For every prime number  $l$  let  $r(l)$  be  $l$ , if  $l$  is different from  $p$ , and  $q^n$ , otherwise. Our last result is the following extension of Chin's main theorem in [8] (stated here for compatible systems coming from abelian varieties only):

**Theorem 1.4.** *There exists a number field  $K$  such that for every place  $\lambda \in |K|$  above  $p$  the field  $K_\lambda$  contains  $\mathbb{Q}_{q^n}$ , moreover there exist a connected split semi-simple algebraic group  $\mathcal{G}$  over  $K$  and a  $K$ -linear vector space  $V$  equipped with a*

$K$ -linear representation  $\rho$  of  $\mathcal{G}$  such that for every prime number  $l$  and for every  $\lambda \in |K|$  lying over  $l$  the triples:

$$(\mathcal{G} \otimes_K K_\lambda, V \otimes_K K_\lambda, \rho \otimes_K K_\lambda)$$

and

$$(G_l^o \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}_r(l)} K_\lambda, V_l(A) \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}_r(l)} K_\lambda, \rho_l^{\text{alg}} \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}_r(l)} K_\lambda)$$

are isomorphic.

The novelty of the theorem is that it includes the  $p$ -adic monodromy group and its representation, too, although it is not the first result to do so; in [10] Crew studied the  $p$ -adic monodromy of generic families of abelian varieties, and proved a form of the result above in this special case. I like to think of this result as a positive characteristic version of the Manin–Mumford conjecture, since it connects the image of the absolute Galois group with the Tannakian fundamental group of the cohomology of the abelian variety with respect to a cohomology theory defined with the help of differential forms. However its proof only requires the extension of the arguments of Larsen–Pink in the proof of one of the main results of [34], a precursor to this type of results, to rigid cohomology, because of Chin’s theorem in [8] quoted above. In this argument Theorems 1.1 and 1.2 play an important role. In the course of this proof we also show other independence results; in particular we show that the group of connected components are independent of  $l$  (Proposition 8.15), extending a classical result of Serre, and we also show an extension of Chin’s main theorem for general  $E$ -compatible systems incorporating overconvergent  $F$ -isocrystals (Theorem 8.23), conditional on a result of Abe (see [1]).

**Contents 1.5.** In the next section we show Theorem 2.22 mentioned above, which roughly says that a sub  $p$ -divisible group of a  $p$ -divisible group defined over a Laurent series field, which is semi-stable in the sense of de Jong, is semi-stable if and only if its crystalline Dieudonné module is overconvergent. Not surprisingly the proof mostly concerns  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -modules over various rings of  $p$ -adic analytic functions, and heavily relies on Kedlaya’s work on this subject. Whenever I could find the claim I needed in his papers, I gave a direct reference, but otherwise the arguments are strongly influenced by his proofs. We fix some notation for overconvergent isocrystals and  $F$ -isocrystals, then we prove some useful semi-simplicity criteria for overconvergent  $F$ -isocrystals in the third section. In the fourth section we define the analogue of the geometric monodromy group in the  $p$ -adic setting and prove that it is reductive and its identity component is the derived group of the identity component of the full monodromy group for pure sheaves. We also show short exact sequences relating various monodromy groups. In the fifth section we give a purely  $p$ -adic proof of Theorems 1.1 and 1.2, combining methods of de Jong and Faltings. The crucial result is Theorem 5.5 mentioned above, from which Theorem 1.2 follows in a rather standard way. We introduce a variant of the cycle class map into rigid cohomology for varieties defined over function fields in the sixth section, and use it to give another proof of Theorems 1.1 and 1.2, deducing them from Zarhin’s results, in the seventh section. In the last section, following Larsen and Pink, prove our independence results, including Theorem 1.4.

**Acknowledgement 1.6.** This paper started as a complement to my joint project [22] with Urs Hartl. I wish to thank him, Chris Lazda and Richard Pink for some useful discussions related to the contents of this article. The author was partially supported by the EPSRC grant P36794.

2.  $p$ -DIVISIBLE GROUPS WITH SEMI-STABLE REDUCTION

**Definition 2.1.** Let  $k$  a perfect field of characteristic  $p > 0$  and let  $\mathcal{O} = \mathbb{W}(k)$  denote the ring of Witt vectors over  $k$ . Let  $v_p$  denote the valuation on  $\mathcal{O}$  normalised so that  $v_p(p) = 1$ . For  $x \in \mathcal{O}$ , let  $\bar{x}$  denote its reduction in  $k$ . Let  $\Gamma$  denote the ring of bidirectional power series:

$$\Gamma = \left\{ \sum_{i \in \mathbb{Z}} x_i u^i \mid x_i \in \mathcal{O}, \lim_{i \rightarrow -\infty} v_p(x_i) = \infty \right\}.$$

Then  $\Gamma$  is a complete discrete valuation ring whose residue field we could identify with  $k((t))$  by identifying the reduction of  $\sum x_i u^i$  with  $\sum \bar{x}_i t^i$ . Let  $\Gamma_+$  and  $\Gamma^\dagger$  denote the subrings:

$$\begin{aligned} \Gamma_+ &= \left\{ \sum_{i \in \mathbb{N}} x_i u^i \mid x_i \in \mathcal{O} \right\} \subset \Gamma, \\ \Gamma^\dagger &= \left\{ \sum_{i \in \mathbb{Z}} x_i u^i \mid x_i \in \mathcal{O}, \liminf_{i \rightarrow -\infty} \frac{v_p(x_i)}{-i} > 0 \right\} \subset \Gamma. \end{aligned}$$

The latter is also a discrete valuation ring with residue field  $k((t))$ , although it is not complete.

**Definition 2.2.** Let  $\mathcal{E}_+ = \Gamma_+[\frac{1}{p}]$ ,  $\mathcal{E} = \Gamma[\frac{1}{p}]$  and  $\mathcal{E}^\dagger = \Gamma^\dagger[\frac{1}{p}]$ . Then  $\mathcal{E}$  and  $\mathcal{E}^\dagger$  are the fraction fields of the rings  $\Gamma$  and  $\Gamma^\dagger$ , respectively. Let  $\mathcal{R}$  denote the ring of bidirectional power series:

$$\mathcal{R} = \left\{ \sum_{i \in \mathbb{Z}} x_i u^i \mid x_i \in \mathcal{O}[\frac{1}{p}], \liminf_{i \rightarrow -\infty} \frac{v_p(x_i)}{-i} > 0, \liminf_{i \rightarrow +\infty} \frac{v_p(x_i)}{i} \geq 0 \right\}.$$

Let  $\mathcal{R}_+$  denote its subring:

$$\mathcal{R}_+ = \mathcal{R} \cap \left\{ \sum_{i \in \mathbb{N}} x_i u^i \mid x_i \in \mathcal{O}[\frac{1}{p}] \right\}.$$

Clearly  $\mathcal{E}_+ \subset \mathcal{R}_+$  and  $\mathcal{E}^\dagger \subset \mathcal{R}$ .

**Proposition 2.3.** *Let  $X$  be an invertible  $n \times n$  matrix over  $\mathcal{R}$ . Then there exist invertible  $n \times n$  matrices  $Y$  over  $\mathcal{E}^\dagger$  and  $Z$  over  $\mathcal{R}_+$  such that  $X = YZ$ .*

*Proof.* This is Proposition 6.5 of [26] on page 172.  $\square$

**Definition 2.4.** Let  $\sigma_0$  denote the canonical lift of the absolute Frobenius  $x \mapsto x^p$  on  $k$  to  $\mathcal{O}$ . Let  $q = p^f$  be a power of  $p$  and put  $\sigma = \sigma_0^f$ . By slight abuse of notation let  $\sigma_0$  also denote the ring endomorphism of  $\Gamma$  given by the rule:

$$(2.4.1) \quad \sigma_0 \left( \sum_{i \in \mathbb{Z}} x_i u^i \right) = \sum_{i \in \mathbb{Z}} \sigma_0(x_i) u^{ip}.$$

This map extends the endomorphism  $\sigma_0$  of  $\mathcal{O}$  introduced above. Since it is injective it induces an endomorphism of  $\mathcal{E}$ . The latter maps the subrings  $\Gamma_+$ ,  $\Gamma^\dagger$ ,  $\mathcal{E}_+$  and  $\mathcal{E}^\dagger$  into themselves. These ring endomorphisms will be denoted by the same symbol by slight abuse of notation. Note that the rule (2.4.1) also defines an endomorphism of  $\mathcal{R}$ , which maps the subring  $\mathcal{R}_+$  onto itself, and extends the endomorphisms of  $\mathcal{E}^\dagger$  defined above. All of these endomorphisms will be denoted by the same symbol, too, by the usual abuse of notation. Moreover let  $\sigma$  denote the  $f$ -th power of any of these endomorphisms. Note that there are other endomorphisms of  $\mathcal{E}$  with these properties and the categories which will consider below do not depend on the choice

of this extension, however for some formulas the choice which we have made is more convenient.

**Definition 2.5.** Let  $R$  be one of the rings  $\Gamma_+, \Gamma, \Gamma^\dagger, \mathcal{E}_+, \mathcal{E}, \mathcal{E}^\dagger, \mathcal{R}_+$  or  $\mathcal{R}$ . For every  $R$ -module  $M$  let  $M \otimes_{R, \sigma} R$  denote the  $R$ -module which is the  $\mathbb{Z}$ -linear tensor product of  $M$  and  $R$ , subject to the additional conditions:

$$sm \otimes_{R, \sigma} r = m \otimes_{R, \sigma} \sigma(s)r, \quad m \otimes_{R, \sigma} sr = s(m \otimes_{R, \sigma} r) \quad (\forall r, s \in R, \forall m \in M).$$

A  $\sigma$ -module  $(M, F)$  over  $R$  is a finitely generated free  $R$ -module  $M$  equipped with an  $R$ -linear map  $F : M \otimes_{R, \sigma} R \rightarrow M$  that becomes an isomorphism over  $R[\frac{1}{p}]$ . To specify  $F$ , it is equivalent to give an additive,  $\sigma$ -linear map from  $M$  to  $M$  that acts on any basis of  $M$  by a matrix invertible over  $R[\frac{1}{p}]$ . By slight abuse of notation let  $F$  denote this map, too.

**Definition 2.6.** Let  $R$  be the same as above. Let  $\Omega_R^1$  be the free module over  $R$  generated by a symbol  $du$ , and define the derivation  $d : R \rightarrow \Omega_R^1$  by the formula

$$d\left(\sum_j x_j u^j\right) = \left(\sum_j j x_j u^{j-1}\right) du.$$

Recall that a connection on an  $R$ -module  $M$  is an additive map  $\nabla : M \rightarrow M \otimes_R \Omega_R^1$  satisfying the Leibniz rule

$$\nabla(c\mathbf{v}) = c\nabla(\mathbf{v}) + \mathbf{v} \otimes dc \quad (\forall c \in R, \mathbf{v} \in M).$$

There is a natural identification  $(M \otimes_{R, \sigma} R) \otimes_R \Omega_R^1 \cong (M \otimes_R \Omega_R^1) \otimes_{R, \sigma} R$  given by the rule:

$$(m \otimes_{R, \sigma} r) \otimes_R \omega \mapsto (m \otimes_R \omega) \otimes_{R, \sigma} r \quad (\forall m \in M, r \in R, \omega \in \Omega_R^1).$$

Using this identification we may define a unique connection  $\nabla_\sigma$  on  $M \otimes_{R, \sigma} R$  with the property:

$$\nabla_\sigma(m \otimes_{R, \sigma} 1) = (\text{id}_M \otimes_R d\sigma)(\nabla m) \otimes_{R, \sigma} 1 \quad (\forall m \in M),$$

where  $d\sigma : \Omega_R^1 \rightarrow \Omega_R^1$  is the differential of  $\sigma$  given by the formula:

$$d\sigma\left(\sum_j x_j u^j du\right) = \left(\sum_j \sigma(x_j) q u^{j+q-1} du\right).$$

**Definition 2.7.** A  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -module  $(M, F, \nabla)$  over  $R$  is a  $\sigma$ -module  $(M, F)$  and a connection  $\nabla$  on  $M$  such that the following diagram commutes:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} M \otimes_{R, \sigma} R & \xrightarrow{\nabla_\sigma} & M \otimes_{R, \sigma} R \otimes_R \Omega_R^1 \\ \downarrow F & & \downarrow F \otimes_R \text{id}_{\Omega_R^1} \\ M & \xrightarrow{\nabla} & M \otimes_R \Omega_R^1. \end{array}$$

Whenever it is convenient we will let  $M$  denote the whole triple  $(M, F, \nabla)$ . As usual, a morphism of  $\sigma$ -modules or  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -modules is a homomorphism of the underlying  $R$ -modules compatible with the additional structure in the obvious fashion. We will write  $\text{Hom}_{(\sigma, \nabla)}(\cdot, \cdot)$  for the group of these homomorphisms. An isomorphism of  $\sigma$ -modules or  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -modules is a morphism which has an inverse. Moreover we can also talk about sub and quotient  $\sigma$ -modules of  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -modules, too.

**Definition 2.8.** Now let  $R \subset R'$  be two rings from the list above and let  $(M, F, \nabla)$  be a  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -module over  $R$ . Let  $F'$  denote

$$F \otimes_R \text{id}_{R'} : (M \otimes_{R, \sigma} R) \otimes_R R' \cong (M \otimes_R R') \otimes_{R', \sigma} R' \longrightarrow M \otimes_R R'$$

and let  $\nabla'$  be the unique connection:

$$\nabla' : M \otimes_R R' \longrightarrow (M \otimes_R R') \otimes_{R'} \Omega_{R'}^1 \cong (M \otimes_R \Omega_R^1) \otimes_{R'} R'$$

such that

$$\nabla'(m \otimes_R s) = \nabla m \otimes_R s + m \otimes_R ds, \quad (\forall m \in M, \forall s \in R).$$

Then the triple  $(M \otimes_R R', F', \nabla')$  is a  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -module over  $R'$  which we will denote by  $M \otimes_R R'$  for simplicity. Moreover for every homomorphism  $h : M \rightarrow M'$  of  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -modules over  $R$  the  $R'$ -linear extension  $h \otimes_R \text{id}_{R'} : M \otimes_R R' \rightarrow M' \otimes_R R'$  is a morphism of  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -modules over  $R'$ .

We will need the local versions of de Jong's and Kedlaya's full faithfulness theorems:

**Theorem 2.9.** *Let  $R$  be either  $\mathcal{E}_+$  or  $\mathcal{E}^\dagger$ , and let  $M, M'$  be  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -modules over  $R$ . Then the forgetful map:*

$$\text{Hom}_{(\sigma, \nabla)}(M, M') \longrightarrow \text{Hom}_{(\sigma, \nabla)}(M \otimes_R \mathcal{E}, M' \otimes_R \mathcal{E})$$

is an isomorphism.

*Proof.* When  $R = \mathcal{E}_+$ , see Theorem 1.1 of [13], when  $R = \mathcal{E}^\dagger$ , see Theorem 1.1 of [27].  $\square$

**Theorem 2.10.** *Let  $M$  be a  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -module over  $\mathcal{E}^\dagger$  such that  $M \otimes_{\mathcal{E}^\dagger} \mathcal{R}$  is isomorphic to  $M' \otimes_{\mathcal{R}_+} \mathcal{R}$ , where  $M'$  is a  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -module over  $\mathcal{R}_+$ . Then there is a  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -module  $M''$  over  $\mathcal{E}_+$  such that  $M$  is isomorphic to  $M'' \otimes_{\mathcal{E}_+} \mathcal{E}^\dagger$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $\mathbf{e}_1, \dots, \mathbf{e}_n$  be an  $\mathcal{E}^\dagger$ -basis of  $M$  so that

$$F\mathbf{e}_j = \sum_i \Phi_{ij} \mathbf{e}_i \text{ and } \nabla \mathbf{e}_j = \sum_i N_{ij} \mathbf{e}_i \otimes du,$$

where  $\Phi = (\Phi_{ij})$  and  $N = (N_{ij})$  are  $n \times n$  matrices with coefficients in  $\mathcal{E}^\dagger$ . By assumption there exists an invertible  $n \times n$  matrix  $X$  over  $\mathcal{R}$  such that

$$X^{-1} \Phi X^\sigma \text{ and } X^{-1} N X + X^{-1} d(X)$$

have entries in  $\mathcal{R}_+$ , where the superscript  $(\cdot)^\sigma$  denotes the action of  $\sigma$  on matrices. By Proposition 2.3 we can factor  $X$  as  $YZ$ , where  $Y$  is an invertible  $n \times n$  matrix over  $\mathcal{E}^\dagger$  and  $Z$  is an invertible  $n \times n$  matrix over  $\mathcal{R}_+$ . Now put  $\mathbf{v}_j = \sum_i Y_{ij} \mathbf{e}_i$ ; then

$$F\mathbf{v}_j = \sum_i \bar{\Phi}_{ij} \mathbf{v}_i \text{ and } \nabla \mathbf{v}_j = \sum_i \bar{N}_{ij} \mathbf{v}_i \otimes du,$$

where  $\bar{\Phi} = (\bar{\Phi}_{ij})$  and  $\bar{N} = (\bar{N}_{ij})$  are  $n \times n$  matrices over  $\mathcal{R}$  such that

$$\bar{\Phi} = Y^{-1} \Phi Y^\sigma = Z(X^{-1} \Phi X^\sigma)(Z^{-1})^\sigma,$$

$$\bar{N} = Y^{-1} N Y + Y^{-1} d(Y) = Z(X^{-1} N X + X^{-1} d(X)) Z^{-1} + Z d(Z^{-1}).$$

Therefore  $\bar{\Phi}$  and  $\bar{N}$  have entries in  $\mathcal{E}_+ = \mathcal{E}^\dagger \cap \mathcal{R}_+$ . So the free  $\mathcal{E}_+$ -module  $M''$  spanned by  $\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n$  is left invariant by  $F$ , while  $\nabla$  maps  $M''$  into  $M'' \otimes_{\mathcal{E}_+} \Omega_{\mathcal{E}_+}^1$ , and hence it is the  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -module whose existence the theorem claims.  $\square$

Let  $R$  be the same as above and let  $M$  be an  $R$ -module equipped with a connection  $\nabla : M \rightarrow M \otimes_R \Omega_R^1$ . Recall that a  $\mathbf{v} \in M$  is horizontal if  $\nabla \mathbf{v} = 0$ . We will need the following form of Dwork's trick:

**Proposition 2.11.** *Let  $M$  be a  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -module over  $\mathcal{R}_+$ . Then  $M$  has an  $\mathcal{R}_+$ -basis consisting of horizontal vectors.*

*Proof.* This is a special case of Corollary 17.2.2 of [31] on page 295.  $\square$

**Lemma 2.12.** *Let  $M$  be a  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -module over  $\mathcal{R}$  which has an  $\mathcal{R}$ -basis consisting of horizontal vectors. Let  $M'$  be a sub  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -module of  $M$ . Then  $M'$  also has an  $\mathcal{R}$ -basis consisting of horizontal vectors.*

*Proof.* Let  $\mathbf{e}_1, \dots, \mathbf{e}_n$  be an  $\mathcal{R}$ -basis of  $M$  consisting of horizontal vectors, and write:

$$F\mathbf{e}_j = \sum_i \Phi_{ij} \mathbf{e}_i,$$

where  $\Phi = (\Phi_{ij})$  is an  $n \times n$  matrix with coefficients in  $\mathcal{R}$ . By the compatibility condition between  $F$  and  $\nabla$  in the definition of  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -modules, we get that  $d(\Phi) = 0$ , which implies that  $\Phi$  actually has coefficients in  $\mathcal{O}[\frac{1}{p}]$ . We get that  $F$  maps the  $\mathcal{O}[\frac{1}{p}]$ -span  $M_0$  of  $\mathbf{e}_1, \dots, \mathbf{e}_n$  into itself. Note that every element of  $M_0$  is horizontal. So by applying the Dieudonné–Manin classification of  $F$ -crystals over the perfect field  $k$  to  $M_0$  we may assume that the matrix of  $F^m$  in the basis  $\mathbf{e}_1, \dots, \mathbf{e}_n$  is diagonal for some positive integer  $m$ , after an  $\mathcal{O}[\frac{1}{p}]$ -linear change of this basis. By substituting  $\sigma^m$  for  $\sigma$  and  $F^m$  for  $F$  we may even assume that  $m = 1$ . For every  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$  let  $\lambda_i \in \mathcal{O}[\frac{1}{p}]$  be such that  $F(\mathbf{e}_i) = \lambda_i \mathbf{e}_i$ .

Now let  $\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_l$  be an  $\mathcal{R}$ -basis of  $M'$ , where  $l \leq n$ . Because the ring  $\mathcal{R}$  is Bézout (see Theorem 3.20 of [26] on page 129), we may use Gauss elimination to reduce to the case when for every  $j = 1, 2, \dots, l$  we have:

$$\mathbf{v}_j = g_j \mathbf{e}_j + \sum_{i>j} f_{ij} \mathbf{e}_i$$

for some  $g_j, f_{ij} \in \mathcal{R}$ , after possibly reordering  $\mathbf{e}_1, \dots, \mathbf{e}_n$ . Note that the determinant of  $F$  in the basis  $\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_l$  is  $\lambda_1 \cdots \lambda_l \cdot g_1^\sigma \cdots g_l^\sigma$ . Because the matrix of  $F$  is invertible, we get that  $g_j^\sigma \in \mathcal{R}^*$  for every  $j \leq l$ . Since for every  $g \in \mathcal{R}$  such that  $g^\sigma$  is invertible we have  $g \in \mathcal{R}^*$ , we may multiply each  $\mathbf{v}_j$  with  $g_j^{-1}$  to get another  $\mathcal{R}$ -basis of  $M'$ . In other words we may assume that  $g_j = 1$  for every  $j \leq l$ . Then we can perform an additional elimination on the basis  $\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_l$  and hence we may assume that  $f_{ij} = 0$  for every  $i \leq l$ . For every  $j \leq l$  we have:

$$\nabla \mathbf{v}_j = \sum_{i>l} \mathbf{e}_i \otimes df_{ij},$$

which lies in the sub  $\mathcal{R}$ -module of  $M \otimes_{\mathcal{R}} \Omega_{\mathcal{R}}^1$  spanned by  $\mathbf{e}_{l+1}, \dots, \mathbf{e}_n$ . It also lies in  $M' \otimes_{\mathcal{R}} \Omega_{\mathcal{R}}^1$ , whose intersection with the previous sub  $\mathcal{R}$ -module is the zero module. Therefore the vectors  $\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_l$  are horizontal.  $\square$

*Remark 2.13.* It is possible to give a short proof of the lemma above using the equivalence between  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -modules over  $\mathcal{R}$  and Weil–Deligne representations (see [37]), but at the price of using some heavy machinery.



**Theorem 2.14.** *Let  $M$  be a  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -module over  $\mathcal{E}^\dagger$  which is a sub  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -module of  $M' \otimes_{\mathcal{E}_+} \mathcal{E}^\dagger$ , where  $M'$  is a  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -module over  $\mathcal{E}_+$ . Then there is a sub  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -module  $M''$  of  $M'$  over  $\mathcal{E}_+$  such that  $M$  is equal to  $M'' \otimes_{\mathcal{E}_+} \mathcal{E}^\dagger$ .*

*Proof.* By Proposition 2.11 the  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -module  $M' \otimes_{\mathcal{E}_+} \mathcal{R}_+$  has an  $\mathcal{R}_+$ -basis consisting of horizontal vectors. Therefore  $M' \otimes_{\mathcal{E}_+} \mathcal{R} \cong (M' \otimes_{\mathcal{E}_+} \mathcal{R}_+) \otimes_{\mathcal{R}_+} \mathcal{R}$  also has an  $\mathcal{R}$ -basis consisting of horizontal vectors. By Lemma 2.12 we get that its sub  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -module  $M \otimes_{\mathcal{E}^\dagger} \mathcal{R}$  has an  $\mathcal{R}$ -basis consisting of horizontal vectors, too. Let  $\mathbf{e}_1, \dots, \mathbf{e}_n$  be such an  $\mathcal{R}$ -basis, and write:

$$F\mathbf{e}_j = \sum_i \Phi_{ij} \mathbf{e}_i,$$

where  $\Phi = (\Phi_{ij})$  is an  $n \times n$  matrix with coefficients in  $\mathcal{R}$ . By the compatibility condition between  $F$  and  $\nabla$  in the definition of  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -modules, we get that  $d(\Phi) = 0$ , which implies that  $\Phi$  actually has coefficients in  $\mathcal{O}[\frac{1}{p}]$ . Therefore  $M \otimes_{\mathcal{E}^\dagger} \mathcal{R}$  is isomorphic to  $M_0 \otimes_{\mathcal{R}_+} \mathcal{R}$ , where  $M_0$  is a  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -module over  $\mathcal{R}_+$ , so by Theorem 2.10 there is a  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -module  $M_+$  over  $\mathcal{E}_+$  such that  $M$  is isomorphic to  $M_+ \otimes_{\mathcal{E}_+} \mathcal{E}^\dagger$ . By Theorem 2.9 the  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -module  $M_+$  is isomorphic to a sub  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -module  $M''$  of  $M'$ , and hence the claim follows.  $\square$

**Definition 2.15.** Let  $R$  be one of the rings  $\Gamma_+, \Gamma, \Gamma^\dagger, \mathcal{E}_+, \mathcal{E}$  or  $\mathcal{E}^\dagger$  (but not  $\mathcal{R}_+$  nor  $\mathcal{R}$ ). Because  $\mathcal{E}$  is a  $p$ -adically complete local field, for every finitely generated  $R$ -module  $M$  the  $\mathcal{E}$ -vector space  $M \otimes_R \mathcal{E}$  is equipped with a canonical topology compatible with the  $p$ -adic topology on  $\mathcal{E}$ . We will call the restriction of this topology onto  $M$  the  $p$ -adic topology on  $M$ . Let  $\nabla$  be a connection on  $M$ . Then the associated differential operator  $D : M \rightarrow M$  is the composition of  $\nabla$  and the map  $\text{id}_M \otimes_R v$ , where  $v : \Omega_R^1 \rightarrow R$  is the unique  $R$ -linear isomorphism with  $v(du) = 1$ . Recall that  $\nabla$  is said to be topologically quasi-nilpotent if  $D^n(x)$  converges to zero for every  $x \in M$  with respect to the  $p$ -adic topology.

**Definition 2.16.** For the rest of this section we assume that  $f = 1$ , and hence  $q = p$  and  $\sigma = \sigma_0$ . A Dieudonné module  $(M, \nabla, F, V)$  over  $R$  (of the type considered in Definition 2.15) is

- (i) a finitely generated free  $R$ -module  $M$ ,
- (ii) a topologically quasi-nilpotent connection  $\nabla : M \rightarrow M \otimes_R \Omega_R^1$ ,
- (iii) two  $R$ -linear maps  $F : M \otimes_{R, \sigma} R \rightarrow M$  and  $V : M \rightarrow M \otimes_{R, \sigma} R$  such that

$$F \circ V = p \cdot \text{id}_M \text{ and } V \circ F = p \cdot \text{id}_{M \otimes_{R, \sigma} R},$$

and the diagrams:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} M \otimes_{R, \sigma} R & \xrightarrow{\nabla_\sigma} & M \otimes_{R, \sigma} R \otimes_R \Omega_R^1 \\ \downarrow F & & \downarrow F \otimes \text{id}_{\Omega_R^1} \\ M & \xrightarrow{\nabla} & M \otimes \Omega_R^1 \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} M & \xrightarrow{\nabla} & M \otimes \Omega_R^1 \\ \downarrow V & & \downarrow V \otimes \text{id}_{\Omega_R^1} \\ M \otimes_{R, \sigma} R & \xrightarrow{\nabla_\sigma} & M \otimes_{R, \sigma} R \otimes_R \Omega_R^1 \end{array}$$

are commutative.

These objects form a category. Clearly for every Dieudonné module  $(M, \nabla, F, V)$  over  $R$  the triple  $(M, F, \nabla)$  is a  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -module over  $R$ , and hence we have a forgetful functor from the category of Dieudonné modules over  $R$  to the category of  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -modules over  $R$ .



**Lemma 2.17.** *The following hold:*

- (a) *the forgetful functor from the category of Dieudonné modules over  $R$  to the category of  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -modules over  $R$  is fully faithful,*
- (b) *if  $1/p \in R$  then the forgetful functor from the category of Dieudonné modules over  $R$  to the category of  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -modules over  $R$  is an equivalence.*

*Proof.* Let  $(M, \nabla, F, V)$  be a Dieudonné module over  $R$ . Because  $F$  is invertible over  $R[\frac{1}{p}]$ , the map  $V$  must be unique, so it can be recovered just from the data  $(M, F, \nabla)$ . Let  $(M', \nabla', F', V')$  be another Dieudonné module over  $R$  and let  $\phi : M \rightarrow M'$  be a homomorphism of the underlying  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -modules. Then for every  $m \in M$  we have:

$$F'(\phi(Vm)) = \phi(FVm) = \phi(pm) = p\phi(m) = F'V'\phi(m).$$

Because  $F'$  is invertible over  $R[\frac{1}{p}]$  we get that  $\phi(Vm) = V'\phi(m)$ , so  $\phi$  commutes with the Verschiebung operators, too. Therefore claim (a) holds. Claim (b) is trivial, since  $F$  is invertible in this case.  $\square$

**Proposition 2.18.** *Let  $X$  be an invertible  $n \times n$  matrix over  $\mathcal{E}$ . Then there exist invertible  $n \times n$  matrices  $Y$  over  $\Gamma$  and  $Z$  over  $\mathcal{O}[\frac{1}{p}]$  such that  $X = YZ$ .*

*Proof.* The proof is completely standard, but we include it for the reader's convenience. We will keep on multiplying  $X$  with invertible  $n \times n$  matrices over  $\Gamma$  on the left and with invertible  $n \times n$  matrices over  $\mathcal{O}[\frac{1}{p}]$  on the right until we get the identity matrix. By multiplying  $X$  with a scalar matrix with diagonal term  $p^m$  on the right for some suitable integer  $m$ , the new matrix, also called  $X$ , will have terms in  $\Gamma$  and will have one term which is a unit in  $\Gamma$ . By permuting the rows and columns of  $X$  we may assume that this term is in the upper left corner. These operations correspond to multiplying by an invertible matrix over  $\mathbb{Z}$  on the left and on the right, respectively. By applying row operations to  $X$  we may assume that there are no non-zero terms in the first column in  $X$  other than in the upper left hand corner. Since  $X$  has terms in  $\Gamma$ , the latter correspond to multiplying by invertible matrices over  $\Gamma$  on the left. Applying the same argument repeatedly to the lower right  $(n-1) \times (n-1)$  block of  $X$  we get an upper triangular matrix with terms in  $\Gamma$  whose diagonal terms are invertible in  $\Gamma$ . This matrix is invertible over  $\Gamma$ , and hence the claim follows.  $\square$

Now let  $R \subset R'$  be two rings of the type considered in Definition 2.15 and let  $(M, \nabla, F, V)$  be a Dieudonné module over  $R$ . Let  $V'$  denote

$$V \otimes_R \text{id}_{R'} : M \otimes_R R' \longrightarrow (M \otimes_{R, \sigma} R) \otimes_R R' \cong (M \otimes_R R') \otimes_{R', \sigma} R'.$$

Then the quadruple  $(M \otimes_R R', \nabla', F', V')$ , where  $F'$  and  $\nabla'$  are the same as in Definition 2.8, is a Dieudonné module over  $R'$  which we will denote by  $M \otimes_R R'$  for simplicity.

**Proposition 2.19.** *Let  $M_1$  and  $M_2$  be Dieudonné modules over  $\Gamma$  and  $\mathcal{E}_+$ , respectively, such that  $M_1 \otimes_{\Gamma} \mathcal{E}$  and  $M_2 \otimes_{\mathcal{E}_+} \mathcal{E}$  are isomorphic Dieudonné modules over  $\mathcal{E}$ . Then there is a Dieudonné module  $M_+$  over  $\Gamma_+$  such that  $M_1$  and  $M_+ \otimes_{\Gamma_+} \Gamma$  are isomorphic Dieudonné modules over  $\Gamma$ , and  $M_2$  and  $M_+ \otimes_{\Gamma_+} \mathcal{E}_+$  are isomorphic Dieudonné modules over  $\mathcal{E}_+$ .*

*Proof.* The argument will follow the same line of reasoning as the proof of Theorem 2.10. Let  $\mathbf{e}_1, \dots, \mathbf{e}_n$  be a  $\Gamma$ -basis of  $M_1$ . Then  $\mathbf{e}_1 \otimes_{\Gamma, \sigma} 1, \dots, \mathbf{e}_n \otimes_{\Gamma, \sigma} 1$  is a  $\Gamma$ -basis

of  $M_1 \otimes_{\Gamma, \sigma} \Gamma$ , so

$$F\mathbf{e}_j \otimes_{\Gamma, \sigma} 1 = \sum_i \Phi_{ij} \mathbf{e}_i, \quad V\mathbf{e}_j = \sum_i B_{ij} \mathbf{e}_i \otimes_{\Gamma, \sigma} 1, \quad \text{and} \quad \nabla \mathbf{e}_j = \sum_i N_{ij} \mathbf{e}_i \otimes du,$$

where  $\Phi = (\Phi_{ij})$ ,  $B = (B_{ij})$  and  $N = (N_{ij})$  are  $n \times n$  matrices with coefficients in  $\Gamma$ . By assumption there exists a  $n \times n$  matrix  $X$  over  $\mathcal{E}$  such that

$$X^{-1}\Phi X^\sigma, \quad (X^{-1})^\sigma B X \quad \text{and} \quad X^{-1}NX + X^{-1}d(X)$$

have entries in  $\mathcal{E}_+$ , where the superscript  $(\cdot)^\sigma$  denotes the action of  $\sigma$  on matrices. By Proposition 2.18 we can factor  $X$  as  $YZ$ , where  $Y$  is an invertible  $n \times n$  matrix over  $\Gamma$  and  $Z$  is an invertible  $n \times n$  matrix over  $\mathcal{E}_+ \supset \mathcal{O}[\frac{1}{p}]$ . Now put  $\mathbf{v}_j = \sum_i Y_{ij} \mathbf{e}_i$ ; then

$$F\mathbf{v}_j \otimes_{\Gamma, \sigma} 1 = \sum_i \bar{\Phi}_{ij} \mathbf{v}_i, \quad V\mathbf{v}_j = \sum_i \bar{B}_{ij} \mathbf{v}_i \otimes_{\Gamma, \sigma} 1 \quad \text{and} \quad \nabla \mathbf{v}_j = \sum_i \bar{N}_{ij} \mathbf{v}_i \otimes du,$$

where  $\bar{\Phi} = (\bar{\Phi}_{ij})$ ,  $\bar{B} = (\bar{B}_{ij})$  and  $\bar{N} = (\bar{N}_{ij})$  are  $n \times n$  matrices over  $\mathcal{E}$  such that

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{\Phi} &= Y^{-1}\Phi Y^\sigma = Z(X^{-1}\Phi X^\sigma)(Z^{-1})^\sigma, \\ \bar{B} &= (Y^{-1})^\sigma B Y = Z^\sigma((X^{-1})^\sigma B X)Z^{-1}, \\ \bar{N} &= Y^{-1}NY + Y^{-1}d(Y) = Z(X^{-1}NX + X^{-1}d(X))Z^{-1} + Zd(Z^{-1}). \end{aligned}$$

Therefore  $\bar{\Phi}$ ,  $\bar{B}$  and  $\bar{N}$  have entries in  $\Gamma_+ = \Gamma \cap \mathcal{E}_+$ . Let  $M_+$  be the free  $\Gamma_+$ -module spanned by  $\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n$ ; clearly  $F$  maps  $M_+ \otimes_{\Gamma_+, \sigma} \Gamma_+ \subset M_+ \otimes_{\Gamma, \sigma} \Gamma$  into  $M_+$ , similarly  $V$  maps  $M_+$  into  $M_+ \otimes_{\Gamma_+, \sigma} \Gamma_+$ , while  $\nabla$  maps  $M_+$  into  $M_+ \otimes_{\Gamma_+} \Omega_{\Gamma_+}^1$ . Therefore  $(M_+, \nabla|_{M_+}, F|_{M_+ \otimes_{\Gamma_+, \sigma} \Gamma_+}, V|_{M_+})$  is the Dieudonné-module whose existence the theorem claims.  $\square$

*Remark 2.20.* For every  $p$ -divisible group  $G$  over a  $\mathbb{F}_p$ -scheme  $S$  let  $\mathbf{D}(G)$  denote the (convergent) Dieudonné module of  $G$  over  $S$ . Now set  $S = \text{Spec}(k[[t]])$  and  $\eta = \text{Spec}(k((t)))$ . The Dieudonné module of a  $p$ -divisible group  $G$  over  $S$  (or over  $\eta$ ) is a Dieudonné module over  $\Gamma_+$  (or over  $\Gamma$ , respectively) in the sense defined above (see 2.2.2, 2.2.4 *h*) and 2.3.4 of [12]). Moreover the Dieudonné module of the base change  $G_\eta$  of a  $p$ -divisible group  $G$  over  $S$  to  $\eta$  is naturally isomorphic to  $\mathbf{D}(G) \otimes_{\Gamma_+} \Gamma$ .

**Definition 2.21.** Let  $G$  be a  $p$ -divisible group over  $\eta$ . We say that  $G$  has good reduction over  $S$  if it extends to a  $p$ -divisible group  $G_+$  over  $S$ . This extension is unique by Corollary 1.2 of [13] on page 301 (because  $k[[t]]$  and  $k((t))$  have finite  $p$ -basis). We say that  $G$  has semi-stable reduction if there exists a filtration

$$0 \subseteq G^\mu \subseteq G^f \subseteq G$$

by  $p$ -divisible groups such that the following conditions hold:

- (a) Both  $G^f$  and  $G/G^\mu$  extend to  $p$ -divisible groups  $G_1$  and  $G_2$  over  $S$ .
- (b) By Corollary 1.2 of [13] cited above there is a unique morphism  $h : G_1 \rightarrow G_2$  extending  $G^f \rightarrow G/G^\mu$ . Then the sheaf

$$G^m = \text{Ker}(h) \quad \text{and} \quad G^{et} = \text{Coker}(h)$$

is a multiplicative, respectively an étale  $p$ -divisible group over  $S$ .

We will say that a  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -module  $M$  over  $\mathcal{E}$  is overconvergent if there is a  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -module  $M^\dagger$  over  $\mathcal{E}^\dagger$  such that  $M$  is isomorphic to  $M^\dagger \otimes_{\mathcal{E}^\dagger} \mathcal{E}$ .

**Theorem 2.22.** *Let  $H$  be a  $p$ -divisible group over  $\eta$  with semi-stable reduction. Let  $G \subseteq H$  be a sub  $p$ -divisible group. Then  $G$  has semi-stable reduction if and only if  $\mathbf{D}(G) \otimes_{\Gamma} \mathcal{E}$  is overconvergent.*

*Remark 2.23.* It is clear that some condition on  $G$  is required. The standard example of the  $p$ -divisible group of a generically ordinary elliptic curve over  $S$  with supersingular special fibre shows that not every sub  $p$ -divisible group of a  $G$  as above will have semi-stable reduction, even when  $G$  has good reduction.

*Proof of Theorem 2.22.* If  $G$  has semi-stable reduction then  $\mathbf{D}(G) \otimes_{\Gamma} \mathcal{E}$  is overconvergent by Corollary 3.16 of [44] on page 421. Therefore we only need to show the converse. Let

$$0 \subseteq H^{\mu} \subseteq H^f \subseteq H$$

be a filtration by  $p$ -divisible groups postulated by Definition 2.21. Let

$$(2.23.1) \quad 0 \subseteq \mathbf{D}(H^{\mu}) \subseteq \mathbf{D}(H^f) \subseteq \mathbf{D}(H)$$

be the corresponding filtration of Dieudonné modules over  $\Gamma$  furnished by functoriality. Consider the filtration:

$$0 \subseteq \mathbf{D}(H^{\mu}) \cap \mathbf{D}(G) \subseteq \mathbf{D}(H^f) \cap \mathbf{D}(G) \subseteq \mathbf{D}(H) \cap \mathbf{D}(G) = \mathbf{D}(G).$$

Because  $\Gamma$  is a principal ideal domain this is a sequence of finitely generated free  $\Gamma$ -modules which are Dieudonné modules if we equip them with the restriction of the operators  $F$  and  $\nabla$  of  $\mathbf{D}(H)$ . Under the correspondence of the main theorem of [12] on page 6 the filtration corresponds to a filtration of  $p$ -divisible groups:

$$(2.23.2) \quad 0 \subseteq G^{\mu} \subseteq G^f \subseteq G.$$

It will be enough to show that this filtration satisfies the conditions of Definition 2.21. Let

$$0 \subseteq M^{\mu} \subseteq M^f \subseteq M$$

be the filtration of  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -modules over  $\mathcal{E}$  which we get from (2.23.1) by base change, that is  $M^{\mu} = \mathbf{D}(H^{\mu}) \otimes_{\Gamma} \mathcal{E}$ ,  $M^f = \mathbf{D}(H^f) \otimes_{\Gamma} \mathcal{E}$ , and  $M = \mathbf{D}(H) \otimes_{\Gamma} \mathcal{E}$ . Let  $H_1$  and  $H_2$  be the unique  $p$ -divisible groups over  $S$  which extend  $H^f$  and  $H/H^{\mu}$ , respectively, and let  $M_1$  and  $M_2$  denote the  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -modules  $\mathbf{D}(H_1) \otimes_{\Gamma_+} \mathcal{E}_+$  and  $\mathbf{D}(H_2) \otimes_{\Gamma_+} \mathcal{E}_+$  over  $\mathcal{E}_+$ , respectively. Then  $M^f \cong M_1 \otimes_{\mathcal{E}_+} \mathcal{E}$  and  $M/M^{\mu} \cong M_2 \otimes_{\mathcal{E}_+} \mathcal{E}$ .

Now let  $L$  be the  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -module  $\mathbf{D}(G) \otimes_{\Gamma} \mathcal{E}$  over  $\mathcal{E}$  and let  $L^{\dagger}$  be a  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -module over  $\mathcal{E}^{\dagger}$  such that  $L$  is isomorphic to  $L^{\dagger} \otimes_{\mathcal{E}^{\dagger}} \mathcal{E}$ . Let  $\iota : L \rightarrow M$  be the injection induced by the inclusion  $G \subseteq H$  and let  $\pi : L \rightarrow M/M^{\mu}$  be the composition of  $\iota$  and the quotient map  $M \rightarrow M/M^{\mu}$ . By Theorem 2.9 there is a homomorphism  $\pi^{\dagger} : L^{\dagger} \rightarrow M_2 \otimes_{\mathcal{E}_+} \mathcal{E}^{\dagger}$  such that  $\pi = \pi^{\dagger} \otimes_{\mathcal{E}_+} \text{id}_{\mathcal{E}^{\dagger}}$ . Let  $L_2^{\dagger}$  be the image of  $h^{\dagger}$ . Then  $L_2^{\dagger}$  is a sub  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -module of  $M_2 \otimes_{\mathcal{E}_+} \mathcal{E}^{\dagger}$  because  $\mathcal{E}^{\dagger}$  is a field. Therefore there is a sub  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -module  $L_2$  of  $M_2$  over  $\mathcal{E}_+$  such that  $L_2^{\dagger}$  is equal to  $L_2 \otimes_{\mathcal{E}_+} \mathcal{E}^{\dagger}$  by Theorem 2.14.

Let  $h : H_1 \rightarrow H_2$  be the unique morphism extending  $H^f \rightarrow H/H^{\mu}$  and let  $\chi : M_1 \rightarrow M_2$  be the homomorphism of  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -modules induced by  $h$  via functoriality. Let  $M_{1,\mu}$  denote the image of  $M_1$  with respect to  $\chi$ , and let  $L_1^{\dagger}$  be the pre-image of  $M_{1,\mu} \otimes_{\mathcal{E}_+} \mathcal{E}^{\dagger} \subseteq M_2 \otimes_{\mathcal{E}_+} \mathcal{E}^{\dagger}$  with respect to  $\pi^{\dagger}$ . It is a sub  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -module of  $L^{\dagger}$ , again because  $\mathcal{E}^{\dagger}$  is a field. The image of  $L_1^{\dagger} \otimes_{\mathcal{E}^{\dagger}} \mathcal{E}$  with respect to the injection  $\iota : L \rightarrow M$  lies in:

$$M_f \cong M_1 \otimes_{\mathcal{E}_+} \mathcal{E} \cong (M_1 \otimes_{\mathcal{E}_+} \mathcal{E}^{\dagger}) \otimes_{\mathcal{E}^{\dagger}} \mathcal{E}.$$

Therefore by Theorem 2.9 there is a homomorphism  $\iota^\dagger : L_1^\dagger \rightarrow M_1 \otimes_{\mathcal{E}_+} \mathcal{E}^\dagger$  such that  $\iota|_{L_1^\dagger \otimes_{\mathcal{E}^\dagger} \mathcal{E}} = \iota^\dagger \otimes_{\mathcal{E}_+} \text{id}_{\mathcal{E}^\dagger}$ . Because  $\iota$  is injective and  $\mathcal{E}$  is a field, and hence it is flat over  $\mathcal{E}^\dagger$ , the map  $\iota^\dagger$  is injective, too. Therefore there is a sub  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -module  $L_1$  of  $M_1$  over  $\mathcal{E}_+$  such that  $L_1^\dagger$  is equal to  $L_1 \otimes_{\mathcal{E}_+} \mathcal{E}^\dagger$  by Theorem 2.14. Now let

$$0 \subseteq L^\mu \subseteq L^f \subseteq L$$

be the filtration of  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -modules over  $\mathcal{E}$  such that  $L^\mu = \mathbf{D}(G^\mu) \otimes_{\Gamma} \mathcal{E}$  and  $L^f = \mathbf{D}(G^f) \otimes_{\Gamma} \mathcal{E}$ . By construction we have:

$$(2.23.3) \quad L^f \cong L_1 \otimes_{\mathcal{E}_+} \mathcal{E} \text{ and } L/L^\mu \cong L_2 \otimes_{\mathcal{E}_+} \mathcal{E}.$$

The  $(\sigma, \nabla)$ -modules  $L_1$  and  $L_2$  are Dieudonné modules by part (b) of Lemma 2.17. Moreover the isomorphisms in (2.23.3) above are isomorphisms in the category of Dieudonné modules by part (a) of Lemma 2.17. So we may use Proposition 2.19 to conclude that there are Dieudonné modules  $L_{1+}$  and  $L_{2+}$  over  $\Gamma_+$  such that

$$L_1 \cong L_{1+} \otimes_{\Gamma_+} \mathcal{E}_+, \quad L_2 \cong L_{2+} \otimes_{\Gamma_+} \mathcal{E}_+, \quad \mathbf{D}(G^f) \cong L_1 \otimes_{\Gamma_+} \Gamma, \quad \mathbf{D}(G/G^\mu) \cong L_2 \otimes_{\mathcal{E}_+} \Gamma$$

as Dieudonné modules.

By the main theorem of [12] on page 6 there are  $p$ -divisible groups  $G_1$  and  $G_2$  over  $S$  such that  $L_{1+} \cong \mathbf{D}(G_1)$  and  $L_{2+} \cong \mathbf{D}(G_2)$  as Dieudonné modules. Therefore the base change of  $G_1$  and  $G_2$  to  $\eta$  is isomorphic to  $G^f$  and  $G/G^\mu$ , respectively, again by the main theorem of [12] on page 6. Moreover this result also implies that  $G_1, G_2$  is a closed subgroup scheme of  $H_1, H_2$ , respectively, and the restriction of  $h$  onto  $G_1$  maps  $G_1$  into  $G_2$ . Let  $g$  denote this restriction. Then  $\text{Ker}(g), \text{Coker}(g)$  is represented by a closed subgroup scheme of  $\text{Ker}(h), \text{Coker}(h)$ , respectively. We get that the filtration (2.23.2) satisfies the conditions of Definition 2.21, and therefore the theorem follows.  $\square$

### 3. SEMI-SIMPLICITY OF ISOCRYSTALS

**Definition 3.1.** Let again  $k$  be a perfect field of characteristic  $p$  and let  $\mathbb{K}$  denote the field of fractions of the ring of Witt vectors  $\mathcal{O}$  of  $k$ . For every finite extension  $\mathbb{L}$  of  $\mathbb{K}$  let  $\mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{L}}$  denote the valuation ring of  $\mathbb{L}$ . For every separated, quasi-projective scheme  $X$  over  $k$  and finite extension  $\mathbb{L}$  of  $\mathbb{K}$  let  $\text{Isoc}(X/\mathbb{L})$  and  $\text{Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L})$  denote the category of  $\mathbb{L}$ -linear convergent and overconvergent isocrystals on  $X$ , respectively. Let  $F : X \rightarrow X$  be a power of the  $p$ -power Frobenius, for example  $F(x) = x^q$  with  $q = p^f$ , and let  $\sigma : \mathbb{L} \rightarrow \mathbb{L}$  be a lift of the  $q$ -power automorphism of the residue field of  $\mathbb{L}$ ; then we let  $F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}(X/\mathbb{L})$  and  $F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L})$  denote the category of  $\mathbb{L}$ -linear convergent and overconvergent  $F_\sigma$ -isocrystals on  $X$ , respectively. When  $F_\sigma$  is a lift of  $F$  on a smooth formal lift  $\mathfrak{X}$  of  $X$  to  $\text{Spf}(\mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{L}})$ , compatible with  $\sigma$ , we may describe  $F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}(X/\mathbb{L})$  as the category of certain vector bundles  $\mathcal{F}$  with an integral connection  $\nabla$  on the rigid analytification  $\mathcal{X}$  of  $\mathfrak{X}$ , equipped with an isomorphism  $F_\sigma^*(\mathcal{F}, \nabla) \rightarrow (\mathcal{F}, \nabla)$  (where we let  $F_\sigma$  denote the rigid analytification of  $F_\sigma$ , too). When  $X$  does not have such a lift  $\mathfrak{X}$ , it is more involved to describe this category (see section 2.3 of [5] or [36], for example). These categories are functorial in  $X$ , that is, given a morphism of  $\pi : Y \rightarrow X$  of separated, quasi-projective schemes over  $k$ , there are corresponding pull-back functors

$$\begin{aligned} \pi^* : \text{Isoc}(X/\mathbb{L}) &\rightarrow \text{Isoc}(Y/\mathbb{L}), \quad \pi^* : F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}(X/\mathbb{L}) \longrightarrow F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}(Y/\mathbb{L}), \\ \pi^* : \text{Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L}) &\rightarrow \text{Isoc}^\dagger(Y/\mathbb{L}) \text{ and } \pi^* : F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L}) \longrightarrow F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(Y/\mathbb{L}) \end{aligned}$$

(see part (i) of 2.3.3 in [5]). When the choice of  $\sigma$  is clear from the setting (for example when  $\mathbb{L}$  is an unramified extension of  $\mathbb{K}$ , and hence  $\sigma$  is unique), we will drop it from the notation.

We will need another result due to Kedlaya:

**Theorem 3.2.** *Assume that  $X$  is smooth and let  $\mathcal{F}$  be an object of  $F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L})$ . Let  $\pi : Y \rightarrow X$  be an open immersion with Zariski-dense image and let  $\mathcal{G} \subseteq \pi^*(\mathcal{F})$  be a sub-object. Then there is a unique sub-object  $\mathcal{G}' \subseteq \mathcal{F}$  such that  $\mathcal{G} = \pi^*(\mathcal{G}')$ .*

*Proof.* This is a special case of Proposition 5.3.1 of [30] on page 1201.  $\square$

**Corollary 3.3.** *Assume that  $X$  is smooth and let  $\mathcal{F}$  be an object of  $F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L})$ . Let  $\pi : Y \rightarrow X$  be an open immersion with Zariski-dense image. Then  $\mathcal{F}$  is semi-simple if and only if  $\pi^*(\mathcal{F})$  is semi-simple.*

*Proof.* First assume that  $\pi^*(\mathcal{F})$  is semi-simple and let  $\mathcal{G} \subseteq \mathcal{F}$  be a sub-object. By assumption there is a projection operator  $v : \pi^*(\mathcal{F}) \rightarrow \pi^*(\mathcal{F})$  with image  $\pi^*(\mathcal{G})$ . By Kedlaya's another full faithfulness theorem (see Theorem 5.2.1 of [30] on page 1199) there is a unique map  $v' : \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}$  whose pull-back  $\pi^*(v')$  is  $v$ . Since  $v^2 = v$ , we get that  $(v')^2 = v'$ , using again full faithfulness. Moreover the image  $\text{Im}(v')$  of  $v'$  restricted to  $Y$  is  $\pi^*(\mathcal{G})$ , so  $\text{Im}(v') = \mathcal{G}$ , as a consequence of full faithfulness, too. Therefore  $v'$  is a projection operator with image  $\mathcal{G}$ , and hence  $\mathcal{F}$  is semi-simple.

Now assume that  $\mathcal{F}$  is semi-simple and let  $\mathcal{G} \subseteq \pi^*(\mathcal{F})$  be a sub-object. By Theorem 3.2 there is a unique sub-object  $\mathcal{G}' \subseteq \mathcal{F}$  such that  $\mathcal{G} = \pi^*(\mathcal{G}')$ . Since  $\mathcal{F}$  is semi-simple there is a projection operator  $v : \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}$  with image  $\mathcal{G}'$ . The pull-back of  $v$  is a projection operator  $\pi^*(v) : \pi^*(\mathcal{F}) \rightarrow \pi^*(\mathcal{F})$  with image  $\mathcal{G}$ . Therefore  $\pi^*(\mathcal{F})$  is semi-simple.  $\square$

**Notation 3.4.** Let  $(\cdot)^\wedge : F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L}) \rightarrow \text{Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L})$  be the functor furnished by forgetting the Frobenius structure. There is also a forgetful functor

$$(\cdot)^\sim : F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L}) \rightarrow F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}(X/\mathbb{L})$$

(see part (i) of 2.3.9 in [5]). By the global version of Kedlaya's full faithfulness theorem, the main result of [27], this functor is fully faithful when  $X$  is smooth. In addition for every finite extension  $\mathbb{L}'/\mathbb{L}$  there is a functor  $\cdot \otimes_{\mathbb{L}} \mathbb{L}' : \text{Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L}) \rightarrow \text{Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L}')$  (see 2.3.6 in [5]). When  $\sigma' : \mathbb{L}' \rightarrow \mathbb{L}'$  be a lift of the  $q$ -power automorphism of  $k$  such that the restriction of  $\sigma'$  onto  $\mathbb{L}$  is  $\sigma$ , there is a similar functor  $\cdot \otimes_{\mathbb{L}} \mathbb{L}' : F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L}) \rightarrow F_{\sigma'}\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L}')$ . Note that the  $n$ -th iterate  $F_\sigma^n$  is a lift of  $F^n$  and  $\sigma^n$ , so the category  $F_{\sigma^n}\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L})$  is well-defined. Let

$$(\cdot)^{(n)} : F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L}) \longrightarrow F_{\sigma^n}\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L}), \quad \mathcal{F} \mapsto \mathcal{F}^{(n)}$$

denote the functor which replaces the Frobenius  $\mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{F}}$  of an object  $\mathcal{F}$  of  $F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L})$  by

$$\mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{F}}^{[n]} = \mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{F}} \circ F_\sigma^*(\mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{F}}) \circ \cdots \circ (F_\sigma^{n-1})^*(\mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{F}}).$$

Finally for the sake of simple notation for every negative integer  $n$  let  $\mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{F}}^{[n]}$  denote the inverse of  $\mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{F}}^{[-n]}$ , and we decree  $\mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{F}}^{[0]}$  to be the identity of  $\mathcal{F}$ .

**Proposition 3.5.** *Assume that  $X$  is a smooth and let  $\mathcal{F}$  be an object of the category  $F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L})$ .*

- (i) *Let  $n$  be a positive integer. Then  $\mathcal{F}^{(n)}$  is semi-simple if and only if  $\mathcal{F}$  is semi-simple.*

(ii) Let  $\mathbb{L}'/\mathbb{L}$  be a finite Galois extension and let  $\sigma' : \mathbb{L}' \rightarrow \mathbb{L}'$  be a lift of the  $q$ -power automorphism of  $k$  such that the restriction of  $\sigma'$  onto  $\mathbb{L}$  is  $\sigma$ . Then  $\mathcal{F} \otimes_{\mathbb{L}} \mathbb{L}'$  is semi-simple if and only if  $\mathcal{F}$  is semi-simple.

*Proof.* Since the functors  $(\cdot)^{(n)}$  and  $(\cdot) \otimes_{\mathbb{L}} \mathbb{L}'$  commute with pull-back, we may assume that  $X$  has a smooth formal lift to  $\mathrm{Spf}(\mathcal{O})$  which can be equipped with a lift of the  $q$ -power Frobenius compatible with  $\sigma$ , by shrinking  $X$  and using Corollary 3.3. We first prove (i). First assume that  $\mathcal{F}^{(n)}$  is semi-simple. Let  $\mathcal{G} \subset \mathcal{F}$  be a sub  $F_\sigma$ -isocrystal. By assumption there is a projection  $\pi : \mathcal{F}^{(n)} \rightarrow \mathcal{G}^{(n)}$  with image  $\mathcal{G}^{(n)}$ . Let  $\mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{F}} : F_\sigma^*(\mathcal{F}) \rightarrow \mathcal{F}$  be the Frobenius of  $\mathcal{F}$  and consider:

$$\pi' = \frac{1}{n} \left( \pi + \mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{F}} \circ F_\sigma^*(\pi) \circ \mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{F}}^{-1} + \cdots + \mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{F}}^{[n-1]} \circ (F_\sigma^{n-1})^*(\pi) \circ \mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{F}}^{[1-n]} \right).$$

Since  $\pi'$  is the linear combination of the composition of horizontal maps, it is horizontal, too. Moreover

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{F}} \circ F_\sigma^*(\pi') \circ \mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{F}}^{-1} &= \frac{1}{n} (\mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{F}} \circ F_\sigma^*(\pi) \circ \mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{F}}^{-1} + \cdots + \mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{F}}^{[n-1]} \circ (F_\sigma^{n-1})^*(\pi) \circ \mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{F}}^{[1-n]} \\ &\quad + \mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{F}}^{[n]} \circ (F_\sigma^n)^*(\pi) \circ \mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{F}}^{[-n]}) \\ &= \frac{1}{n} (\mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{F}} \circ F_\sigma^*(\pi) \circ \mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{F}}^{-1} + \cdots + \mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{F}}^{[n-1]} \circ (F_\sigma^{n-1})^*(\pi) \circ \mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{F}}^{[1-n]} \\ &\quad + \pi) = \pi', \end{aligned}$$

where we used that

$$\mathbf{F} \circ F_\sigma^*(\mathbf{F}^{[i]}) = \mathbf{F}^{[i+1]}, \quad F_\sigma^*(\mathbf{F}^{[-i]}) \circ \mathbf{F}^{-1} = \mathbf{F}^{[-i-1]} \quad (\forall i = 0, 1, \dots, n-1),$$

and that  $\pi$  is an endomorphism of  $\mathcal{F}^{(n)}$ , so it satisfies the identity:

$$\mathbf{F}^{[n]} \circ (F_\sigma^n)^*(\pi) \circ \mathbf{F}^{[-n]} = \pi.$$

So  $\pi'$  is an endomorphism of the  $F_\sigma$ -isocrystal  $\mathcal{F}$ . Since  $\mathcal{G} \subset \mathcal{F}$  is a sub  $F_\sigma$ -isocrystal, we have  $\mathbf{F}^{[i]}((F_\sigma^i)^*(\mathcal{G})) \subseteq \mathcal{G}$  and  $\mathbf{F}^{[-i]}(\mathcal{G}) \subseteq (F_\sigma^i)^*(\mathcal{G})$  for every  $i = 0, 1, \dots, n-1$ . Since for every such  $i$  the map  $(F_\sigma^i)^i(\pi)$  is a projection onto  $(F_\sigma^i)^*(\mathcal{G})$ , we get that the restriction of  $\mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{F}}^{[i]} \circ (F_\sigma^i)^*(\pi) \circ \mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{F}}^{[-i]}$  onto  $\mathcal{G}$  is the identity for every such  $i$ , and hence the same holds for  $\pi'$ . Moreover for every such  $i$  the image of  $(F_\sigma^i)^*(\pi)$  lies in  $(F_\sigma^i)^*(\mathcal{G})$ , so the image of  $\mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{F}}^{[i]} \circ (F_\sigma^i)^*(\pi) \circ \mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{F}}^{[-i]}$  lies in  $\mathcal{G}$ . Therefore the same holds for  $\pi'$ . We get that the latter is a projection onto  $\mathcal{G}$  and hence one implication of claim (i) follows.

Assume now that  $\mathcal{F}$  is semi-simple. Since the direct sum of semi-simple  $F$ -isocrystals is semi-simple, we may assume without the loss of generality that  $\mathcal{F}$  is actually simple and non-trivial. Then there is a non-trivial simple sub  $F_\sigma^n$ -isocrystal  $\mathcal{G} \subset \mathcal{F}^{(n)}$ . Let  $S$  denote the set of all sub  $F_\sigma^n$ -isocrystals of  $\mathcal{F}^{(n)}$  isomorphic to  $\mathcal{G}$ . For every  $\mathcal{H} \in S$  let  $e_{\mathcal{H}} : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}^{(n)}$  be the inclusion map. There is a non-empty finite subset  $B \subseteq S$  such that the sum:

$$\sum_{\mathcal{H} \in B} e_{\mathcal{H}} : \bigoplus_{\mathcal{H} \in B} \mathcal{H} \longrightarrow \mathcal{F}^{(n)}$$

is an embedding, and  $B$  is maximal with respect to this property. Let  $\mathcal{J}$  denote the image of this map; it is a sub  $F_\sigma^n$ -isocrystal of  $\mathcal{F}^{(n)}$ .

We claim that  $\mathcal{J}$  contains every  $\mathcal{H} \in S$ . Assume that this is not the case and let  $\mathcal{I} \in S$  be such that  $\mathcal{I} \not\subseteq \mathcal{J}$ . Then the composition  $f$  of  $e_{\mathcal{I}}$  and the quotient map:

$$\mathcal{F}^{(n)} \longrightarrow \mathcal{F}^{(n)} / \bigoplus_{\mathcal{H} \in B} \mathcal{H}$$

is non-trivial. Since  $\mathcal{I}$  is simple the kernel of  $f$  is the zero crystal, and hence this composition is actually an embedding. Therefore the sum:

$$e_{\mathcal{I}} + \sum_{\mathcal{H} \in B} e_{\mathcal{H}} : \mathcal{I} \oplus \bigoplus_{\mathcal{H} \in B} \mathcal{H} \longrightarrow \mathcal{F}^{(n)}$$

is an embedding, too, a contradiction. Note that for  $\mathcal{I} \in S$  the image of  $F_{\sigma}^*(\mathcal{I})$  with respect to  $\mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{F}}$  is also an element of  $S$ , so  $\mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{F}}$  maps  $F_{\sigma}^*(\mathcal{J})$  into  $\mathcal{J}$ . Since they have the same rank, the map  $\mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{F}} : F_{\sigma}^*(\mathcal{J}) \rightarrow \mathcal{J}$  is an isomorphism. We get that  $\mathcal{J}$  underlies an object of  $F_{\sigma}$ -Isoc $^{\dagger}(X/\mathbb{L})$ , and hence it is equal to  $\mathcal{F}^{(n)}$ . We get that the latter is semi-simple, so (i) is true.

Next we will show claim (ii). First assume that  $\mathcal{F} \otimes_{\mathbb{L}} \mathbb{L}'$  is semi-simple. Let  $G$  be the Galois group of  $\mathbb{L}'/\mathbb{L}$  and let  $\mathcal{G} \subset \mathcal{F}$  be a sub  $F_{\sigma}$ -isocrystal. By assumption there is a projection  $\pi : \mathcal{F} \otimes_{\mathbb{L}} \mathbb{L}' \rightarrow \mathcal{G} \otimes_{\mathbb{L}} \mathbb{L}'$  with image  $\mathcal{G} \otimes_{\mathbb{L}} \mathbb{L}'$ . Let  $\mathfrak{X}$  be a smooth formal lift of  $X$  to  $\mathrm{Spf}(\mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{L}})$ , and let  $\mathfrak{X}'$  be the base change of  $\mathfrak{X}$  to  $\mathrm{Spf}(\mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{L}'})$ . Let  $\mathcal{X}$  and  $\mathcal{X}'$  denote the rigid analytic space attached to  $\mathfrak{X}$  over  $\mathbb{L}$  and attached to  $\mathfrak{X}'$  over  $\mathbb{L}'$ , respectively. Let  $F_{\sigma} : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow \mathfrak{X}$  be a lift of  $F$  to  $\mathfrak{X}$  compatible with  $\sigma$ . Then the fibre product  $F_{\sigma'}$  of  $F_{\sigma}$  and  $\sigma'$  is a lift  $\mathfrak{X}' \rightarrow \mathfrak{X}'$  of  $F$  to  $\mathfrak{X}'$  compatible with  $\sigma'$ . By slight abuse of notation let  $F_{\sigma}$  and  $F_{\sigma'}$  also denote the morphism of  $\mathcal{X}$  and  $\mathcal{X}'$  induced by  $F_{\sigma}$  and  $F_{\sigma'}$ , respectively.

Note that  $G$  acts on  $\mathrm{Spf}(\mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{L}'})$  which in turn induces an action of  $G$  on  $\mathfrak{X}'$ , and hence on the rigid analytic space  $\mathcal{X}'$  attached to  $\mathfrak{X}'$ . By definition  $\mathcal{F}^{\sim}$  is a vector bundle with a flat connection on  $\mathcal{X}$  equipped with a horizontal isomorphism  $\mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{F}} : F_{\sigma}^*(\mathcal{F}^{\sim}) \rightarrow \mathcal{F}^{\sim}$ . In order to avoid overloading the notation, we will drop the superscript  $\sim$  in the rest of the proof. By the global version of Kedlaya's full faithfulness theorem this will not matter at all. Therefore the base change  $\mathcal{F}' = \mathcal{F} \otimes_{\mathbb{L}} \mathbb{L}'$  is a vector bundle with a flat connection on  $\mathcal{X}'$  equipped with an isomorphism  $\mathbf{F}'_{\mathcal{F}} : F_{\sigma'}^*(\mathcal{F}') \rightarrow \mathcal{F}'$  which is also equipped with a compatible descent data with respect to the  $G$ -action, that is, there is an isomorphism  $\iota_g : g^*(\mathcal{F}') \rightarrow \mathcal{F}'$  for every  $g \in G$  such that  $\iota_h \circ h^*(\iota_g) = \iota_{hg}$  for every  $g, h \in G$  and  $\iota_1 = \mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{F}'}$ . Set:

$$\pi' = \frac{1}{|G|} \sum_{g \in G} \iota_g \circ g^*(\pi) \circ \iota_g^{-1}.$$

Since  $\pi'$  is the linear combination of the composition of morphism of  $F_{\sigma'}$ -isocrystals, it is a morphism of  $F_{\sigma'}$ -isocrystals, too. Set  $\mathcal{G}' = \mathcal{G} \otimes_{\mathbb{L}} \mathbb{L}' \subset \mathcal{F}'$ ; then  $\iota_g(g^*(\mathcal{G}')) \subseteq \mathcal{G}'$  and  $\iota_g^{-1}(\mathcal{G}') \subseteq g^*(\mathcal{G}')$  for every  $g \in G$ . Since for every such  $g$  the map  $g^*(\pi)$  is a projection onto  $g^*(\mathcal{G}')$ , we get that the restriction of  $\iota_g \circ g^*(\pi) \circ \iota_g^{-1}$  onto  $\mathcal{G}'$  is the identity for every such  $g$ , and hence the same holds for  $\pi'$ . Moreover for every such  $g$  the image of  $g^*(\pi)$  lies in  $g^*(\mathcal{G}')$ , so the image of  $\iota_g \circ g^*(\pi) \circ \iota_g^{-1}$  lies in  $\mathcal{G}'$ . Therefore the same holds for  $\pi'$ . We get that the latter is a projection onto  $\mathcal{G}'$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} \iota_h \circ h^*(\pi') \circ \iota_h^{-1} &= \frac{1}{|G|} \sum_{g \in G} \iota_h \circ h^*(\iota_g) \circ (hg)^*(\pi) \circ h^*(\iota_g^{-1}) \circ \iota_h^{-1} \\ &= \frac{1}{|G|} \sum_{g \in G} \iota_{gh} \circ (hg)^*(\pi) \circ \iota_{gh}^{-1} = \pi' \end{aligned}$$



for every  $h \in H$ , since  $\iota_g^{-1} = g^*(\iota_{g^{-1}})$  for every  $g \in G$ , and hence

$$\begin{aligned} h^*(\iota_g^{-1}) \circ \iota_h^{-1} &= h^*(g^*(\iota_{g^{-1}})) \circ h^*(\iota_{h^{-1}}) = (hg)^*(\iota_{g^{-1}} \circ (g^{-1})^*(\iota_{h^{-1}})) \\ &= (hg)^*(\iota_{g^{-1}h^{-1}}) = (hg)^*(\iota_{(hg)^{-1}}) = \iota_{hg}^{-1} \end{aligned}$$

for every  $g, h \in G$ . So we get via Grothendieck's descent that  $\pi'$  is the base change of a projection  $\mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}$  with image  $\mathcal{G}$ , and hence one implication of claim (ii) holds.

Assume now that  $\mathcal{F}$  is semi-simple. Again we may assume without the loss of generality that  $\mathcal{F}$  is actually simple and non-trivial. Let  $\mathfrak{X}$  be again a smooth formal lift of  $X$  to  $\mathrm{Spf}(\mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{L}})$ , and let  $\mathfrak{X}', \mathcal{X}, \mathcal{X}', F_\sigma$  and  $F_{\sigma'}$  be as above. Moreover let  $G$  be again the Galois group of  $\mathbb{L}'/\mathbb{L}$ , and let  $\{\iota_g : g^*(\mathcal{F}') \rightarrow \mathcal{F}' | g \in G\}$  be the descent data with respect to the  $G$ -action. There is a non-trivial simple sub  $F_{\sigma'}$ -isocrystal  $\mathcal{G} \subset \mathcal{F} \otimes_{\mathbb{L}} \mathbb{L}'$ . Let  $S$  denote the set of all sub  $F_{\sigma'}$ -isocrystals of  $\mathcal{F} \otimes_{\mathbb{L}} \mathbb{L}'$  isomorphic to  $\mathcal{G}$ , and for every  $\mathcal{H} \in S$  let  $e_{\mathcal{H}} : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{F} \otimes_{\mathbb{L}} \mathbb{L}'$  be the inclusion map. There is a non-empty finite subset  $B \subseteq S$  such that the sum:

$$\sum_{\mathcal{H} \in B} e_{\mathcal{H}} : \bigoplus_{\mathcal{H} \in B} \mathcal{H} \longrightarrow \mathcal{F} \otimes_{\mathbb{L}} \mathbb{L}'$$

is an embedding, and  $B$  is maximal with respect to this property. Let  $\mathcal{J}$  denote the image of this map; it is a sub  $F_{\sigma'}$ -isocrystal of  $\mathcal{F} \otimes_{\mathbb{L}} \mathbb{L}'$ .

Arguing as above we get that  $\mathcal{J}$  contains every  $\mathcal{H} \in S$ . Note that for  $\mathcal{I} \in S$  and  $g \in G$  the image of  $g^*(\mathcal{I})$  with respect to  $\iota_g$  is also an element of  $S$ , so  $\iota_g$  maps  $g^*(\mathcal{J})$  into  $\mathcal{J}$ . Since they have the same rank, the map  $\iota_g|_{g^*(\mathcal{J})} : g^*(\mathcal{J}) \rightarrow \mathcal{J}$  is an isomorphism. We get that  $\{\iota_g|_{g^*(\mathcal{J})} : g^*(\mathcal{J}) \rightarrow \mathcal{J} | g \in G\}$  is a descent data with respect to the  $G$ -action. By Grothendieck's decent  $\mathcal{J}$  is the pull-back of a sub-object of  $\mathcal{F}$ , and hence it is equal to  $\mathcal{F} \otimes_{\mathbb{L}} \mathbb{L}'$ . We get that the latter is semi-simple, so (i) is true.  $\square$

**Definition 3.6.** Assume now that  $k$  is the finite field  $\mathbb{F}_q$ . Let  $F : X \rightarrow X$  be the  $q$ -power Frobenius, and let  $\mathbb{L}$  be a totally ramified finite extension of  $\mathbb{K}$ . Let  $\sigma$  be the identity of  $\mathbb{L}$ ; it is a lift of the  $q$ -power automorphism of its residue field. Let  $\mathcal{F}$  be an object of  $F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L})$ . Then for every point  $x : \mathrm{Spec}(\mathbb{F}_{q^n}) \rightarrow X$  of degree  $n$  the automorphism  $x^*(\mathcal{F}) \rightarrow x^*(\mathcal{F})$  induced by the  $n$ -th power of the Frobenius of  $x^*(\mathcal{F})$  is  $\mathbb{L}_n$ -linear, where  $\mathbb{L}_n$  is the unique unramified extension of  $\mathbb{L}$  of degree  $n$ . Let  $\mathrm{Frob}_x(\mathcal{F})$  denote this map. Let  $|X|$  denote the set of closed points of  $X$  and let  $\|X\|$  denote the set of isomorphism classes of pairs consisting of a finite extension  $\mathbb{F}_{q^n}$  of  $\mathbb{F}_q$  and a morphism  $\alpha : \mathrm{Spec}(\mathbb{F}_{q^n}) \rightarrow X$ . Associating to such  $\alpha$  the point  $\alpha(\mathrm{Spec}(\mathbb{F}_{q^n})) \in |X|$  one gets a canonical map  $\phi : \|X\| \rightarrow |X|$ . Let  $[X] \subseteq \|X\|$  denote the subset of the isomorphism classes of those morphisms  $\alpha : \mathrm{Spec}(\mathbb{F}_{q^n}) \rightarrow X$  which induce an isomorphism between  $\mathrm{Spec}(\mathbb{F}_{q^n})$  and the closed sub-scheme  $\alpha(\mathrm{Spec}(\mathbb{F}_{q^n}))$ . If  $x, y \in [X]$  are such that  $\phi(x) = \phi(y)$ , then the linear maps  $\mathrm{Frob}_x(\mathcal{F})$  and  $\mathrm{Frob}_y(\mathcal{F})$  are isomorphic, and we let  $\mathrm{Frob}_{\phi(x)}(\mathcal{F})$  denote this common isomorphism class, by slight abuse of notation.

**Definition 3.7.** Fix now an isomorphism  $\iota : \overline{\mathbb{K}} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  and let  $|\cdot| : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$  be the usual archimedean absolute value on  $\mathbb{C}$ . Recall that  $\mathcal{F}$  is (point-wise)  $\iota$ -pure of weight  $w$ , where  $w \in \mathbb{Z}$ , if for every  $x \in |X|$  and for every eigenvalue  $\alpha \in \overline{\mathbb{K}}$  of  $\mathrm{Frob}_x(\mathcal{F})$  we have  $|\iota(\alpha)| = q^{w \deg(x)/2}$ . We say that an overconvergent  $F$ -isocrystal  $\mathcal{F}$  on  $U$  is  $\iota$ -mixed of weight  $\leq w$ , if it has a filtration by objects of  $F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L})$  which are all  $\iota$ -pure of weight at most  $w$ . We will drop  $\iota$  from the terminology

if  $\mathcal{F}$  satisfies the conditions for every possible choice of  $\iota$ . Similarly we may talk about the purity and mixedness of rigid cohomology groups of overconvergent  $F$ -isocrystals.

**Proposition 3.8.** *Let  $\mathcal{F}$  be a  $\iota$ -pure object of  $F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L})$  and assume that  $X$  is realisable. Then  $\mathcal{F}^\wedge$  is a semi-simple overconvergent isocrystal.*

*Proof.* This is a special case of Theorem 4.3.1 in [2]. □

**Proposition 3.9.** *Let  $\mathcal{F}$  be a semi-simple object of  $F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L})$ . Then  $\mathcal{F}^\wedge$  is a semi-simple overconvergent isocrystal.*

*Proof.* We are going to argue very similarly to the proof of one half of Proposition 3.5. Since the direct sum of semi-simple overconvergent isocrystals is semi-simple, we may assume without the loss of generality that  $\mathcal{F}$  is actually simple and non-trivial. Then there is a non-trivial simple overconvergent sub-isocrystal  $\mathcal{G} \subset \mathcal{F}^\wedge$ . Let  $S$  denote the set of all overconvergent sub-isocrystals of  $\mathcal{F}^\wedge$  isomorphic to  $\mathcal{G}$ . For every  $\mathcal{H} \in S$  let  $e_{\mathcal{H}} : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}^\wedge$  be the inclusion map. There is a non-empty finite subset  $B \subseteq S$  such that the sum:

$$\sum_{\mathcal{H} \in B} e_{\mathcal{H}} : \bigoplus_{\mathcal{H} \in B} \mathcal{H} \longrightarrow \mathcal{F}^\wedge$$

is an embedding, and  $B$  is maximal with respect to this property. Let  $\mathcal{J}$  denote the image of this map; it is an overconvergent sub-isocrystal of  $\mathcal{F}^\wedge$ . Arguing exactly the same as we did in the proof of Proposition 3.5 we get that  $\mathcal{J}$  contains every  $\mathcal{H} \in S$ , and hence the map  $\mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{F}} : F_\sigma^*(\mathcal{J}) \rightarrow \mathcal{J}$  is an isomorphism. We get that  $\mathcal{J}$  underlies an object of  $F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L})$ , and hence it is equal to  $\mathcal{F}^\wedge$ . We get that the latter is semi-simple. □

#### 4. THE $p$ -ADIC ARITHMETIC AND GEOMETRIC MONODROMY GROUPS

**Notation 4.1.** Assume for a moment that  $K$  is any field of characteristic zero. For any  $K$ -linear Tannakian category  $\mathbf{T}$ , finite extension  $L/K$  of  $K$ , and  $L$ -valued fibre functor  $\omega$  on  $\mathbf{T}$  let  $\pi(\mathbf{T}, \omega)$  denote the Tannakian fundamental group of  $\mathbf{T}$  with respect to  $\omega$ . Let  $\mathbf{B}$  be a  $K$ -linear Tannakian category, let  $\mathbf{C}$  be a strictly full rigid abelian tensor subcategory of  $\mathbf{B}$  and let  $b : \mathbf{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{B}$  be the inclusion functor. Let  $L/K$  be a finite extension of  $K$  and let  $\mathbf{A}$  be another  $K$ -linear Tannakian category equipped with an  $L$ -valued fibre functor  $\omega$  and assume that there is a faithful tensor functor  $a : \mathbf{B} \rightarrow \mathbf{A}$  of Tannakian categories. Let  $a_* : \pi(\mathbf{A}, \omega) \rightarrow \pi(\mathbf{B}, \omega \circ a)$  and  $b_* : \pi(\mathbf{B}, \omega \circ a) \rightarrow \pi(\mathbf{C}, \omega \circ a \circ b)$  be the homomorphisms induced by  $a$  and  $b$ , respectively.

The next proposition will supply a handy condition for certain sequences of Tannakian fundamental groups to be exact.

**Proposition 4.2.** *Assume that the following holds:*

- (i) *For an object  $\mathcal{G}$  of  $\mathbf{B}$  the object  $a(\mathcal{G})$  of  $\mathbf{A}$  is trivial if and only if  $\mathcal{G}$  is an object of  $\mathbf{C}$ .*
- (ii) *Let  $\mathcal{G}$  be an object of  $\mathbf{B}$ , and let  $\mathcal{H}_0 \subseteq a(\mathcal{G})$  denote the largest trivial sub-object. Then there exists an  $\mathcal{H} \subseteq \mathcal{G}$  with  $\mathcal{H}_0 = a(\mathcal{H})$ .*
- (iii) *Every object  $\mathcal{G}$  of  $\mathbf{A}$  is a sub-object of an object of the form  $a(\mathcal{H})$  with some object  $\mathcal{H}$  of  $\mathbf{B}$ .*

Then the sequence:

$$0 \longrightarrow \pi(\mathbf{A}, \omega) \xrightarrow{a_*} \pi(\mathbf{B}, \omega \circ a) \xrightarrow{b_*} \pi(\mathbf{C}, \omega \circ a \circ b) \longrightarrow 0.$$

is exact.

*Proof.* Assume first that  $L = K$ . Then the Tannakian categories  $\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B}$  and  $\mathbf{C}$  are actually neutral. Since  $\mathbf{C}$  is a subcategory of  $\mathbf{B}$ , the map  $b_*$  is surjective, and in particular it is fully faithful. Therefore the claim is true in this case by Theorem A.1 of [16] on page 396. We prove the proposition in general by reducing to this case.

Let  $\mathbf{T}$  be an arbitrary  $K$ -linear Tannakian category. Recall that an  $L$ -module in  $\mathbf{T}$  is a pair  $(\mathcal{X}, \alpha_{\mathcal{X}})$  with  $\mathcal{X}$  an object of  $\mathbf{T}$  and  $\alpha_{\mathcal{X}}$  a homomorphism  $L \rightarrow \text{End}_{\mathbf{T}}(\mathcal{X})$ . Let  $\mathbf{T}_{(L)}$  denote the category of  $L$ -modules in  $\mathbf{T}$ . It is an  $L$ -linear Tannakian category. If there is an  $L$ -linear fibre functor  $\lambda$  on  $\mathbf{T}$  then it induces a  $L$ -linear fibre functor  $\lambda_{(L)}$  on  $\mathbf{T}_{(L)}$  which makes  $\mathbf{T}_{(L)}$  into a neutral Tannakian category tensor-equivalent to the representation category of the Tannakian fundamental group  $\pi(\mathbf{T}, \lambda)$  (see Proposition 3.11 of [15]). So by the above we need to show the following:

- (a) For an object  $(\mathcal{G}, \alpha_{\mathcal{G}})$  of  $\mathbf{B}_{(L)}$  the object  $a_{(L)}(\mathcal{G}, \alpha_{\mathcal{G}})$  of  $\mathbf{A}_{(L)}$  is trivial if and only if  $(\mathcal{G}, \alpha_{\mathcal{G}})$  is an object of  $\mathbf{C}_{(L)}$ .
- (b) Let  $(\mathcal{G}, \alpha_{\mathcal{G}})$  be an object of  $\mathbf{B}_{(L)}$ , and let  $(\mathcal{H}_0, \alpha_{\mathcal{H}_0}) \subseteq a_{(L)}(\mathcal{G}, \alpha_{\mathcal{G}})$  denote the largest trivial sub-object. Then there exists an  $(\mathcal{H}, \alpha_{\mathcal{H}}) \subseteq (\mathcal{G}, \alpha_{\mathcal{G}})$  with  $(\mathcal{H}_0, \alpha_{\mathcal{H}_0}) = a_{(L)}(\mathcal{H}, \alpha_{\mathcal{H}})$ .
- (c) Every object  $(\mathcal{G}, \alpha_{\mathcal{G}})$  of  $\mathbf{A}_{(L)}$  is a sub-object of an object  $a_{(L)}(\mathcal{H}, \alpha_{\mathcal{H}})$  with some object  $(\mathcal{H}, \alpha_{\mathcal{H}})$  of  $\mathbf{B}_{(L)}$ .

In order to do so we will need to recall the following construction. Fix a  $K$ -basis  $e_1, e_2, \dots, e_n$  of  $L$  and for every  $l \in L$  let  $M(l) \in M_n(K)$  denote the matrix of multiplication by  $l$  in this basis. For every object  $\mathcal{X}$  of a  $K$ -linear Tannakian category  $\mathbf{T}$  as above let  $\pi_{ij}^{\mathcal{X}} : \mathcal{X}^{\oplus n} \rightarrow \mathcal{X}^{\oplus n}$  be the morphism which maps the  $i$ -th component identically to the  $j$ -th component and maps all other components to zero. Then the  $K$ -span  $M(\mathcal{X})$  of the  $\pi_{ij}^{\mathcal{X}}$  in  $\text{End}_{\mathbf{T}}(\mathcal{X})$  is isomorphic to the matrix algebra  $M_n(K)$  such that  $\pi_{ij}^{\mathcal{X}}$  corresponds to the elementary matrix which has zeros everywhere except in the  $j$ -th term of the  $i$ -th row, where it has entry 1. Now let  $\mathcal{X}_{(L)}$  denote  $\mathcal{X}^{\oplus n}$  equipped with the homomorphism  $\alpha_{\mathcal{X}_{(L)}}$  which maps every  $l \in L$  to the element of  $M(\mathcal{X})$  corresponding to  $M(l)$  under the isomorphism  $M(\mathcal{X}) \cong M_n(K)$  constructed above. Then  $(\mathcal{X}^{\oplus n}, \alpha_{\mathcal{X}_{(L)}})$  is an object of  $\mathbf{T}_{(L)}$ . By definition an object  $(\mathcal{G}, \alpha_{\mathcal{G}})$  of  $\mathbf{T}_{(L)}$  is trivial if it is isomorphic to  $\mathcal{X}_{(L)}$  for some trivial object  $\mathcal{X}$  of  $\mathbf{T}$ .

**Lemma 4.3.** *An object  $(\mathcal{G}, \alpha_{\mathcal{G}})$  of  $\mathbf{T}_{(L)}$  is trivial if and only if  $\mathcal{G}$  is trivial.*

*Proof.* The first condition obviously implies the second. Now let  $(\mathcal{G}, \alpha_{\mathcal{G}})$  be an object of  $\mathbf{T}_{(L)}$  such that  $\mathcal{G}$  is trivial. Then  $\text{End}_{\mathbf{T}}(\mathcal{G}) \cong M_m(K)$  where  $m$  is the rank of  $\mathcal{G}$ . Since  $L$  is a semi-simple  $K$ -algebra, the representation  $\alpha_{\mathcal{G}} : L \rightarrow M_m(K)$  decomposes into a direct sum of irreducible representations. This decomposition underlies a decomposition of  $\mathcal{G}$  into direct summands. Since  $\mathcal{G}$  is trivial, the same is true for these summands. Moreover the  $K$ -algebra  $L$  has a unique irreducible representation which is given by the rule  $l \mapsto M(l)$ . The claim is now clear.  $\square$

Condition (a) now immediately follows from condition (i). Next we show (b). By assumption (ii) there exists an  $\mathcal{H} \subseteq \mathcal{G}$  with  $\mathcal{H}_0 = a(\mathcal{H})$ . The action of  $L$  via  $a_{(L)}(\alpha_{\mathcal{G}})$  leaves  $\mathcal{H}_0$  invariant, so  $\alpha_{\mathcal{G}}$  also leaves  $\mathcal{H}$  invariant. Therefore  $(\mathcal{H}, \alpha_{\mathcal{G}}|_{\mathcal{H}})$  is a sub-object of  $(\mathcal{G}, \alpha_{\mathcal{G}})$  such that  $(\mathcal{H}_0, \alpha_{\mathcal{H}_0}) = a_{(L)}(\mathcal{H}, \alpha_{\mathcal{G}}|_{\mathcal{H}})$ . Condition (b) follows. Finally we show condition (c). By assumption (iii) there is an object  $\mathcal{H}_0$  of  $\mathbf{B}$  such that  $\mathcal{G}$  is a sub-object of  $a(\mathcal{H}_0)$ . Clearly  $\mathcal{G}^{(L)}$  is a sub-object of  $a(\mathcal{H}_0)^{(L)} = a_{(L)}(\mathcal{H}_0^{(L)})$  in  $\mathbf{A}_{(L)}$ . So it will be enough to show that  $(\mathcal{G}, \alpha_{\mathcal{G}})$  is a sub-object of  $\mathcal{G}^{(L)}$  in  $\mathbf{B}_{(L)}$ . However the morphism  $\mathcal{G} \rightarrow \mathcal{G}^{\oplus n}$  given by the vector  $(\alpha_{\mathcal{G}}(e_1), \dots, \alpha_{\mathcal{G}}(e_n))$  induces such an embedding.  $\square$

**Definition 4.4.** We will continue with the assumptions and notation of Definition 3.6. Suppose now that  $X$  is geometrically connected. Fix a point  $x \in X(\mathbb{F}_{q^n})$ . The pull-back with respect to  $x$  furnishes a functor from  $\text{Isoc}^{\dagger}(X/\mathbb{L})$  into the category of finite dimensional  $\mathbb{L}_n$ -linear vector spaces which makes  $\text{Isoc}^{\dagger}(X/\mathbb{L})$  into a Tannakian category. (See 2.1 of [9] on page 438.) Let  $\omega_x$  denote the corresponding fibre functor on  $\text{Isoc}^{\dagger}(X/\mathbb{L})$ . For every strictly full rigid abelian tensor subcategory  $\mathbf{C}$  of  $\text{Isoc}^{\dagger}(X/\mathbb{L})$  let  $\text{DGal}(\mathbf{C}, x)$  denote the Tannakian fundamental group of  $\mathbf{C}$  with respect to the fibre functor  $\omega_x$ . Note that the composition of the forgetful functor  $(\cdot)^{\wedge} : F_{\sigma}\text{-Isoc}^{\dagger}(X/\mathbb{L}) \rightarrow \text{Isoc}^{\dagger}(X/\mathbb{L})$  and  $\omega_x$ , which we will denote by the same symbol by slight abuse of notation, makes  $F_{\sigma}\text{-Isoc}^{\dagger}(X/\mathbb{L})$  into a Tannakian category, too. Similarly as above for every strictly full rigid abelian tensor subcategory  $\mathbf{C}$  of  $F_{\sigma}\text{-Isoc}^{\dagger}(X/\mathbb{L})$  let  $\text{Gr}(\mathbf{C}, x)$  denote the Tannakian fundamental group of  $\mathbf{C}$  with respect to the fibre functor  $\omega_x$ . Moreover let  $\mathbf{C}^{\wedge}$  denote strictly full rigid abelian tensor subcategory generated by the image of  $\mathbf{C}$  with respect to  $(\cdot)^{\wedge}$  and for simplicity let  $\text{DGal}(\mathbf{C}, x)$  denote  $\text{DGal}(\mathbf{C}^{\wedge}, x)$ .

**Notation 4.5.** For every Tannakian category  $\mathbf{C}$  and every object  $\mathcal{F}$  of  $\mathbf{C}$  let  $\langle\langle \mathcal{F} \rangle\rangle$  denote the strictly full rigid abelian tensor subcategory of  $\mathbf{C}$  generated by  $\mathcal{F}$ . For every object  $\mathcal{F}$  of  $F_{\sigma}\text{-Isoc}^{\dagger}(X/\mathbb{L})$  let  $\text{DGal}(\mathcal{F}, x)$  and  $\text{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, x)$  denote  $\text{DGal}(\langle\langle \mathcal{F}^{\wedge} \rangle\rangle, x)$  and  $\text{Gr}(\langle\langle \mathcal{F} \rangle\rangle, x)$ , respectively. Moreover for every such  $\mathcal{F}$  let  $\langle\langle \mathcal{F} \rangle\rangle_{\text{const}}$ ,  $\mathbf{W}(\mathcal{F}, x)$  denote the strictly full rigid abelian tensor subcategory of constant objects of  $\langle\langle \mathcal{F} \rangle\rangle$  and the Tannakian fundamental group of  $\langle\langle \mathcal{F} \rangle\rangle_{\text{const}}$  with respect to the fibre functor  $\omega_x$ , respectively. Let  $\alpha : \text{DGal}(\mathcal{F}, x) \rightarrow \text{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, x)$  be the homomorphism induced by the forgetful functor  $(\cdot)^{\wedge} : \langle\langle \mathcal{F} \rangle\rangle \rightarrow \langle\langle \mathcal{F}^{\wedge} \rangle\rangle$ , and let  $\beta : \text{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, x) \rightarrow \mathbf{W}(\mathcal{F}, x)$  be the homomorphism induced by the inclusion  $\langle\langle \mathcal{F} \rangle\rangle_{\text{const}} \subset \langle\langle \mathcal{F} \rangle\rangle$ .

**Definition 4.6.** Let  $\mathcal{F}$  be an object of  $F_{\sigma}\text{-Isoc}^{\dagger}(X/\mathbb{L})$ . Note that for every  $x \in [X]$  the Frobenius  $\text{Frob}_x(\mathcal{F})$  is an automorphism of the the fibre functor  $\omega_x$ , so it furnishes an element of  $\text{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, x)(\mathbb{L}_n)$  which we will denote by the same symbol by slight abuse of notation. For the reasons we mentioned in Definition 3.6, the conjugacy class of  $\text{Frob}_x(\mathcal{F})$  only depends on  $\phi(x)$ , which we will denote by  $\text{Frob}_{\phi(x)}(\mathcal{F})$ . Now let  $y$  be another point in  $[X]$ . Then there is an isomorphism between  $\text{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, y)$  and  $\text{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, x)$  after base change to the algebraic closure  $\overline{\mathbb{L}}$ , which is well-defined up to conjugacy. Let  $\text{Frob}_y(\mathcal{F})$  also denote the conjugacy class in  $\text{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, x)(\overline{\mathbb{L}})$  spanned by the image of  $\text{Frob}_y(\mathcal{F})$  under this isomorphism. There is a conjugacy class  $\text{Frob}_y \subseteq \text{Gr}(F_{\sigma}\text{-Isoc}^{\dagger}(X/\mathbb{L}), x)(\overline{\mathbb{L}})$  whose image is  $\text{Frob}_y(\mathcal{F})$  under the canonical surjection  $\text{Gr}(F_{\sigma}\text{-Isoc}^{\dagger}(X/\mathbb{L}), x) \rightarrow \text{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, x)$  for every  $\mathcal{F}$  as above.

The monodromy group  $\text{DGal}(\mathcal{F}, x)$  was introduced by Crew [9]. Next we describe its relationship to  $\text{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, x)$ .

**Proposition 4.7.** *Assume that  $\mathcal{F}^\wedge$  is semi-simple. Then the sequence:*

$$0 \longrightarrow \mathrm{DGal}(\mathcal{F}, x) \xrightarrow{\alpha} \mathrm{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, x) \xrightarrow{\beta} \mathbf{W}(\mathcal{F}, x) \longrightarrow 0$$

*is exact.*

*Proof.* By Proposition 4.2 we only have to check the following:

- (i) For an object  $\mathcal{G}$  of  $\langle\langle \mathcal{F} \rangle\rangle$  the object  $\mathcal{G}^\wedge$  of  $\langle\langle \mathcal{F}^\wedge \rangle\rangle$  is trivial if and only if  $\mathcal{G}$  is an object of  $\langle\langle \mathcal{F} \rangle\rangle_{\mathrm{const}}$ .
- (ii) Let  $\mathcal{G}$  be an object of  $\langle\langle \mathcal{F} \rangle\rangle$ , and let  $\mathcal{H}_0 \subseteq \mathcal{G}^\wedge$  denote the largest trivial sub-object. Then there exists an  $\mathcal{H} \subseteq \mathcal{G}$  with  $\mathcal{H}_0 = \mathcal{H}^\wedge$ .
- (iii) Every object  $\mathcal{G}$  of  $\langle\langle \mathcal{F}^\wedge \rangle\rangle$  is a sub-object of an object of the form  $\mathcal{H}^\wedge$  with some object  $\mathcal{H}$  of  $\langle\langle \mathcal{F} \rangle\rangle$ .

Condition (i) trivially holds: an  $F$ -isocrystal is constant if and only if it is trivial as an isocrystal. Next we show (ii). The maximal trivial overconvergent sub-isocrystal  $\mathcal{H}_0$  of an overconvergent  $F$ -isocrystal  $\mathcal{G}$  is generated by (overconvergent) horizontal sections of  $\mathcal{G}$ . Since the Frobenius map of  $\mathcal{G}$  respects horizontal sections, the isocrystal  $\mathcal{H}_0$  underlies an overconvergent  $F$ -isocrystal. Finally we prove (iii). Because the image of  $\langle\langle \mathcal{F} \rangle\rangle$  under  $(\cdot)^\wedge$  is closed under direct sums, tensor products and duals, there is an object  $\mathcal{H}$  of  $\langle\langle \mathcal{F} \rangle\rangle$  such that  $\mathcal{G}$  is a subquotient of  $\mathcal{H}^\wedge$ . Since  $\mathcal{F}^\wedge$  is semi-stable, so is every object in  $\langle\langle \mathcal{F}^\wedge \rangle\rangle$ . Therefore  $\mathcal{G}$  is isomorphic to a sub-object of  $\mathcal{H}^\wedge$ .  $\square$

**Corollary 4.8.** *Assume either that  $X$  is realisable, geometrically connected, and  $\mathcal{F}$  is  $\iota$ -pure, or that  $\mathcal{F}$  is semi-simple. Then the sequence:*

$$0 \longrightarrow \mathrm{DGal}(\mathcal{F}, x) \xrightarrow{\alpha} \mathrm{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, x) \xrightarrow{\beta} \mathbf{W}(\mathcal{F}, x) \longrightarrow 0$$

*is exact.*

*Proof.* The first case follows from Proposition 3.8 and Proposition 4.7, while the second case follows from Proposition 3.9 and Proposition 4.7.  $\square$

**Proposition 4.9.** *Assume that  $X$  is realisable, smooth, and geometrically connected. Also suppose that  $\mathcal{F}$  is  $\iota$ -pure and  $\mathrm{Frob}_x(\mathcal{F})$  is semi-simple for a closed point  $x \in |X|$ . Then  $\mathcal{F}$  is semi-simple.*

*Proof.* Let  $n$  be the degree of  $x$  and let  $X_n$  be the base change of  $X$  to  $\mathrm{Spec}(\mathbb{F}_{q^n})$ . Let  $\sigma'$  be the identity of  $\mathbb{L}_n$ ; it is a lift of the  $q^n$ -power automorphism of its residue field. Then  $\mathcal{F}^{(n)} \otimes_{\mathbb{L}} \mathbb{L}_n$  is an object of  $F_{\sigma'}\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L}_n) = F_{\sigma'}\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X_n/\mathbb{L}_n)$ . By Proposition 3.5 it will be sufficient to prove that  $\mathcal{F}^{(n)} \otimes_{\mathbb{L}} \mathbb{L}_n$  is semi-simple. Let  $r : |X_n| \rightarrow |X|$  be the map induced by the base change morphism  $X_n \rightarrow X$  of schemes. Then for every  $y \in |X_n|$  the linear map  $\mathrm{Frob}_y(\mathcal{F}^{(n)} \otimes_{\mathbb{L}} \mathbb{L}_n)$  is the  $n$ -th power of  $\mathrm{Frob}_{r(y)}(\mathcal{F})$ . We get that  $\mathcal{F}^{(n)} \otimes_{\mathbb{L}} \mathbb{L}_n$  is  $\iota$ -pure (as an object of  $F_{\sigma'}\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X_n/\mathbb{L}_n)$ ), and  $\mathrm{Frob}_x(\mathcal{F})$  is semi-simple for every  $y \in |X_n|$  such that  $r(y) = x$ . So we may assume without the loss of generality that  $x \in X(\mathbb{F}_q)$ .

In this case  $\langle\langle \mathcal{F} \rangle\rangle$  is a neutral Tannakian category with respect to the fibre functor  $\omega_x$ , and hence it will be sufficient to prove that  $\mathrm{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, x)$  is reductive. Let  $N \subseteq \mathrm{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, y)$  be a connected unipotent normal subgroup. Since  $\mathcal{F}^\wedge$  is semi-simple by Proposition 3.8, the intersection  $N \cap \mathrm{DGal}(\mathcal{F}, y)$  is trivial. Therefore  $N$  injects into  $\mathbf{W}(\mathcal{F}, y)$  with respect to the quotient map  $\beta : \mathrm{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, y) \rightarrow \mathbf{W}(\mathcal{F}, y)$ . With respect to the Zariski topology the group  $\mathbf{W}(\mathcal{F}, x)$  is generated by the element which, as

an automorphism of  $\omega_x$ , is the  $q$ -linear Frobenius  $\text{Frob}_x(\mathcal{C})$  for every object  $\mathcal{C}$  of  $\langle\langle \mathcal{F} \rangle\rangle_{const}$ . Since for every object  $\mathcal{G}$  of  $\langle\langle \mathcal{F} \rangle\rangle$  the linear map  $\text{Frob}_x(\mathcal{G})$  is semi-simple by assumption, we get that the group  $\mathbf{W}(\mathcal{F}, y)$  is reductive. Therefore  $N$  is trivial, and hence  $\text{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, y)$  is reductive, too.  $\square$

**Definition 4.10.** For every  $p$ -divisible group  $G$  over a  $\mathbb{F}_q$ -scheme  $S$  let  $D(G) = \mathbf{D}(G) \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_q} \mathbb{Q}_q$  be the associated convergent Dieudonné  $F$ -isocrystal. For every abelian scheme  $C$  over  $S$  let  $C[p^\infty]$  and  $\mathbf{D}(C)$ ,  $D(C)$  denote the  $p$ -divisible group of  $C$ , and  $\mathbf{D}(C[p^\infty])$ ,  $D(C[p^\infty])$ , respectively. When  $S = U$  is a geometrically connected smooth quasi-projective curve defined over the finite field  $\mathbb{F}_q$  of characteristic  $p$ , as in the introduction, let  $D^\dagger(C)$  denote the overconvergent crystalline Dieudonné module of  $C$  over  $U$  (for a construction see [23], sections 4.3–4.8). Its key property is that there is a natural isomorphism  $D^\dagger(C) \sim \cong D(C)$ .

*Remark 4.11.* It is easy to see that the claim above applies to the overconvergent Dieudonné crystal of an abelian scheme as follows. Let  $A$  be an abelian scheme over  $U$  and for every closed point  $y \in |U|$  let  $A_y$  be the fibre of  $A$  over  $y$ . For every such  $y$  (of degree  $n$ ) the fibre of  $D^\dagger(A)$  at  $y$  is isomorphic to  $D(A_y) \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{q^n}} \mathbb{Q}_{q^n}$ . The action of the  $q^n$ -linear Frobenius on the latter is semi-simple by classical Honda-Tate theory. Moreover we also get that  $D^\dagger(A)$  is  $\iota$ -pure of weight 1. So Theorem 1.2 follows from Corollary 4.9 (and Proposition 3.5).

**Proposition 4.12.** *Assume that  $\mathcal{F}$  is a semi-simple object of  $F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(U/\mathbb{L})$ . Then  $\text{DGal}(\mathcal{F}, x)^\circ$  is semi-simple, and it is the derived group of  $\text{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, x)^\circ$ .*

*Proof.* The first claim is Corollary 4.10 of [9] on page 457. With respect to the Zariski topology the group  $\mathbf{W}(\mathcal{F}, x)$  is generated by the element which, as an automorphism of  $\omega_x$ , is the  $q$ -linear Frobenius  $\text{Frob}_x(\mathcal{C})$  for every object  $\mathcal{C}$  of  $\langle\langle \mathcal{F} \rangle\rangle_{const}$ . So it is commutative, and hence  $[\text{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, x), \text{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, x)] \subseteq \text{DGal}(\mathcal{F}, x)$ . Therefore  $[\text{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, x)^\circ, \text{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, x)^\circ] \subseteq \text{DGal}(\mathcal{F}, x)^\circ$ . In order to show the reverse inclusion it will be enough to show that  $[\text{DGal}(\mathcal{F}, x)^\circ, \text{DGal}(\mathcal{F}, x)^\circ] = \text{DGal}(\mathcal{F}, x)^\circ$ . But this is true by the main result of [40], since  $\text{DGal}(\mathcal{F}, x)^\circ$  is semi-simple.  $\square$

The following result will play an important role in the proofs of Proposition 8.15 and Theorem 8.23:

**Theorem 4.13.** *Assume that  $\mathcal{F}$  is a semi-simple  $\iota$ -pure object of  $F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(U/\mathbb{L})$ . Then the set  $\bigcup_{x \in |U|} \text{Frob}_x(\mathcal{F})$  is Zariski dense in  $\text{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, x)$ .*

*Proof.* This is a special case of Theorem 10.1 of [22].  $\square$

It will be also useful to record the following

**Lemma 4.14.** *Assume that  $\mathcal{F}$  is an object of  $F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(U/\mathbb{L})$  such that  $\text{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, x)$  is finite. Then  $\mathcal{F}$  is unit-root.*

*Proof.* Recall that  $\mathcal{F}$  is unit-root if for every  $y \in |U|$  the eigenvalues of  $\text{Frob}_y(\mathcal{F})$  are  $p$ -adic units. By definition  $\text{Frob}_y(\mathcal{F})$  is an element of  $\text{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, y)$ . Since the algebraic groups  $\text{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, x)$  and  $\text{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, y)$  are isomorphic over some finite extension of  $\mathcal{L}$ , we get that  $\text{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, y)$  is finite. Therefore the eigenvalues of  $\text{Frob}_y(\mathcal{F})$  are roots of unity, and hence the claim follows.  $\square$

*Remark 4.15.* An important consequence of the above is the following. Let  $\mathcal{F}$  be any object of  $F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(U/\mathbb{L})$ . Then there is an object  $\mathcal{C}$  of  $\langle\langle \mathcal{F} \rangle\rangle$  whose monodromy group



$\mathrm{Gr}(\mathcal{C}, x)$  is the quotient  $\mathrm{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, x)/\mathrm{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, x)^o$ . Since the latter is finite we get from Lemma 4.14 that  $\mathcal{C}$  is unit-root. The Crew–Katz–Tsuzuki tensor equivalence (see Theorem 1.4 of [9] on page 434 and Theorem 1.3.1 of [45] on page 387) between the category of unit root  $F$ -isocrystals and  $p$ -adic Galois representations identifies the monodromy group  $\mathrm{Gr}(\mathcal{C}, x)$ , and hence  $\mathrm{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, x)/\mathrm{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, x)^o$ , with a finite quotient of  $\pi_1(U, \bar{x})$  where  $x \in U(\overline{\mathbb{F}}_{q^n})$  is a point lying above  $x$ .

**Lemma 4.16.** *Let  $\mathcal{F}$  be an object of  $F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(U/\mathbb{L})$  such that  $\mathrm{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, x)$  is finite, and let  $\rho : \pi_1(U, \bar{x}) \rightarrow \mathrm{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, x)(\overline{\mathbb{L}})$  be the corresponding surjection. Then for every  $y \in |U|$  the image of  $\mathrm{Frob}_y$  with respect to  $\rho$  is the conjugacy class of the geometric Frobenius at  $y$ .*

*Proof.* It is enough to check the claim after pull-back to  $y$ , that is, we may assume that  $U$  is a point without the loss of generality. In this case the claim follows from Corollary 4.6 of [22].  $\square$

**Notation 4.17.** Assume again that  $X$  is geometrically connected, and fix a point  $x \in X(\mathbb{F}_{q^n})$ . Note that the functor

$$(\cdot)^{(n)} : F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L}) \longrightarrow F_{\sigma^n}\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L})$$

induces a map

$$\phi : \mathrm{Gr}(F_{\sigma^n}\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L}), x) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Gr}(F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L}), x)$$

of Tannakian fundamental groups. Let  $\mathbf{C}_n$  be the full subcategory of  $F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L})$  whose objects  $\mathcal{F}$  are such that  $\mathcal{F}^{(n)}$  is trivial; it is a strictly full rigid abelian tensor subcategory. Let

$$\psi : \mathrm{Gr}(F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L}), x) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Gr}(\mathbf{C}_n, x)$$

denote the map induced by the inclusion functor  $\mathbf{C}_n \rightarrow F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L})$ .

**Proposition 4.18.** *Assume that  $X$  is smooth. Then the sequence:*

$$0 \rightarrow \mathrm{Gr}(F_{\sigma^n}\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L}), x) \xrightarrow{\phi} \mathrm{Gr}(F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L}), x) \xrightarrow{\psi} \mathrm{Gr}(\mathbf{C}_n, x) \rightarrow 0$$

*is exact, and  $\mathrm{Gr}(\mathbf{C}_n, x) \cong \mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}$ .*

*Proof.* We will argue very similarly to the proof of Proposition 4.7. By Proposition 4.2 we only have to check the following:

- (i) For an object  $\mathcal{G}$  of  $F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L})$  the object  $\mathcal{G}^{(n)}$  of  $F_{\sigma^n}\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L})$  is trivial if and only if  $\mathcal{G}$  is an object of  $\mathbf{C}_n$ .
- (ii) Let  $\mathcal{G}$  be an object of  $F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L})$ , and let  $\mathcal{H}_0 \subseteq \mathcal{G}^{(n)}$  denote the largest trivial sub-object. Then there exists an  $\mathcal{H} \subseteq \mathcal{G}$  with  $\mathcal{H}_0 = \mathcal{H}^{(n)}$ .
- (iii) Every object  $\mathcal{G}$  of  $F_{\sigma^n}\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L})$  is a sub-object of an object of the form  $\mathcal{H}^{(n)}$  with some object  $\mathcal{H}$  of  $F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L})$ .

Condition (i) holds by definition. Next we show (ii). We already saw in the proof of Proposition 4.7 that the maximal trivial overconvergent sub-isocrystal  $\mathcal{H}'_0$  of  $\mathcal{G}^\wedge$  is underlies an overconvergent  $F$ -isocrystal  $\mathcal{G}' \subseteq \mathcal{G}$ . Since  $\mathcal{G}'$  is generated by (overconvergent) horizontal sections, its sub  $F$ -isocrystal generated by those horizontal sections which are fixed by the  $n$ -th power of the Frobenius underlies  $\mathcal{H}_0$ . Now we prove (iii). Let  $\mathbf{F}_\mathcal{G} : (F_\sigma^n)^*(\mathcal{G}) \rightarrow \mathcal{G}$  be the Frobenius of  $\mathcal{G}$ , let  $\mathcal{F}$  be the direct sum:

$$\mathcal{F} = \mathcal{G} \oplus F_\sigma^*(\mathcal{G}) \oplus \cdots \oplus (F_\sigma^{n-1})^*(\mathcal{G})$$



in the category  $\text{Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L})$ , and consider the map

$$\mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{F}} : F_\sigma^*(\mathcal{F}) \cong F_\sigma^*(\mathcal{G}) \oplus (F_\sigma^2)^*(\mathcal{G}) \oplus \cdots \oplus (F_\sigma^n)^*(\mathcal{G}) \longrightarrow \mathcal{F}$$

given by the matrix:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 & \text{id}_{F_\sigma^*(\mathcal{G})} & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \text{id}_{(F_\sigma^2)^*(\mathcal{G})} & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \text{id}_{(F_\sigma^{n-1})^*(\mathcal{G})} \\ \mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{G}} & 0 & \cdots & \cdots & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Since  $\mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{F}}$  is the linear combination of the composition of horizontal maps, it is horizontal, too. Moreover the map:

$$\mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{F}}^{[n]} = \mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{F}} \circ F_\sigma^*(\mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{F}}) \circ \cdots \circ (F_\sigma^{n-1})^*(\mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{F}}) : (F_\sigma^n)^*(\mathcal{F}) \cong (F_\sigma^n)^*(\mathcal{G}) \oplus \cdots \oplus (F_\sigma^{2n-1})^*(\mathcal{G}) \rightarrow \mathcal{F}$$

is given by the diagonal matrix

$$\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{G}} & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & F_\sigma^*(\mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{G}}) & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \vdots & \cdots & \ddots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & \cdots & \cdots & 0 & (F_\sigma^{n-1})^*(\mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{G}}) \end{bmatrix},$$

so it is an isomorphism. We get that  $\mathcal{F}$  equipped with  $\mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{F}}$  is an object of the category  $F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L})$ , and  $\mathcal{G}$  is a direct summand of  $\mathcal{F}^{(n)}$ . Claim (iii) follows.

Finally we prove that  $\text{Gr}(\mathbf{C}_n, x) \cong \mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}$ . Let  $\mathcal{G}$  be an arbitrary object of  $\mathbf{C}_n$ . Note that for every point  $y : \text{Spec}(\mathbb{F}_{q^d}) \rightarrow X$  of degree  $d$  the pull-back  $y^*(\mathcal{G}^{(n)}) \cong y^*(\mathcal{G})^{(n)}$  is trivial. Therefore the eigenvalues of  $\text{Frob}_z(\mathcal{G})$  for any closed point  $z \in |X|$  are  $n$ -th roots of unity, and hence  $\mathcal{G}$  is unit-root. The claim now follows from the Crew–Katz–Tsuzuki tensor equivalence.  $\square$

**Notation 4.19.** Let  $\pi : Y \rightarrow X$  a finite, étale, Galois map of geometrically connected smooth schemes over  $\mathbb{F}_q$  with Galois group  $G$  and assume that there is a  $y \in Y(\mathbb{F}_{q^n})$  such that  $\pi(y) = x$ . The pull-back functor:

$$\pi^* : F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L}) \longrightarrow F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(Y/\mathbb{L})$$

induces a map

$$\rho : \text{Gr}(F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(Y/\mathbb{L}), y) \longrightarrow \text{Gr}(F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L}), x)$$

of Tannakian fundamental groups. (For the definition of  $\pi_*$  and  $\pi^*$  in this setting see section 1.7 of [9].) Let  $\mathbf{C}(\pi)$  be the full subcategory of  $F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L})$  whose objects  $\mathcal{F}$  are such that  $\pi^*(\mathcal{F})$  is trivial; it is a strictly full rigid abelian tensor subcategory. Let

$$\sigma : \text{Gr}(F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L}), x) \longrightarrow \text{Gr}(\mathbf{C}(\pi), x)$$

denote the map induced by the inclusion functor  $\mathbf{C}(\pi) \rightarrow F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L})$ .

**Proposition 4.20.** *The sequence:*

$$0 \rightarrow \text{Gr}(F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(Y/\mathbb{L}), y) \xrightarrow{\rho} \text{Gr}(F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L}), x) \xrightarrow{\sigma} \text{Gr}(\mathbf{C}(\pi), x) \rightarrow 0$$

is exact, and  $\text{Gr}(\mathbf{C}(\pi), x) \cong G$ .

*Proof.* Our proof is again along the same line as the proofs for Propositions 4.7 and 4.18. First we prove that  $\mathrm{Gr}(\mathbf{C}(\pi), x) \cong G$ . Let  $\mathcal{G}$  be an arbitrary object of  $\mathbf{C}_n$ . Note that for every closed point  $z \in |X|$  there is a close point  $\tilde{z} \in |Y|$  such that  $\pi(\tilde{z}) = z$ . Then some power of the eigenvalues of  $\mathrm{Frob}_z(\mathcal{G})$  with positive exponent are all eigenvalues of  $\mathrm{Frob}_{\tilde{z}}(\pi^*(\mathcal{G}))$ . Since  $\mathrm{Frob}_{\tilde{z}}(\pi^*(\mathcal{G}))$  is the identity we get that the eigenvalues of  $\mathrm{Frob}_z(\mathcal{G})$  are roots of unity, and hence  $\mathcal{G}$  is unit-root. The claim now follows from the Crew–Katz–Tsuuzuki tensor equivalence and its commutativity with the pull-back functor. Since  $\mathbf{C}(\pi)$  is a subcategory of  $F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L})$ , we only have to check the following:

- (i) For an object  $\mathcal{G}$  of  $F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L})$  the object  $\pi^*(\mathcal{G})$  of  $F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(Y/\mathbb{L})$  is trivial if and only if  $\mathcal{G}$  is an object of  $\mathbf{C}(\pi)$ .
- (ii) Let  $\mathcal{G}$  be an object of  $F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L})$ , and let  $\mathcal{H}_0 \subseteq \pi^*(\mathcal{G})$  denote the largest trivial sub-object. Then there exists  $\mathcal{H} \subseteq \mathcal{G}$  with  $\mathcal{H}_0 = \pi^*(\mathcal{H})$ .
- (iii) Every object  $\mathcal{G}$  of  $F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(Y/\mathbb{L})$  is a sub-object of an object of the form  $\pi^*(\mathcal{H})$  with some object  $\mathcal{H}$  of  $F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L})$ .

Condition (i) holds by definition. Since for every  $\mathcal{G}$  of  $F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(Y/\mathbb{L})$  the adjunction map  $\mathcal{G} \rightarrow \pi_*(\pi^*(\mathcal{G}))$  is injective, claim (iii) also follows. Finally we show (ii). As a pull-back, the  $F$ -isocrystal  $\pi^*(\mathcal{G})$  is equipped with a descent data with respect to  $\pi$ . For every  $g \in G$  let  $\iota_g : g^*(\pi^*(\mathcal{G})) \rightarrow \pi^*(\mathcal{G})$  be the isomorphism in this descent data. For every  $g \in G$  the  $F$ -isocrystal  $g^*(\mathcal{H}_0)$  is trivial, and hence so its image under  $\iota_g$ . Therefore  $\iota_g(g^*(\mathcal{H}_0)) \subseteq \mathcal{H}_0$ . As the ranks of these isocrystals are the same, we get that the restriction of  $\iota_g$  onto  $g^*(\mathcal{H}_0)$  furnishes an isomorphism  $\iota_g|_{g^*(\mathcal{H}_0)} : g^*(\mathcal{H}_0) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_0$ . Since these maps are restrictions of a descent data, they also satisfy the same cocycle condition, and hence  $\{\iota_g|_{g^*(\mathcal{H}_0)} : g^*(\mathcal{H}_0) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_0 | g \in G\}$  is a descent data on  $\mathcal{H}_0$  with respect to  $\pi$ . Therefore by Théorème 1 of [18] on page 593 there is an  $F$ -isocrystal  $\mathcal{H} \subseteq \mathcal{G}$  such that  $\mathcal{H}_0 = \pi^*(\mathcal{H})$ , so claim (iii) holds.  $\square$

**Corollary 4.21.** *Let  $\pi : V \rightarrow U$  be a finite étale cover of geometrically connected smooth schemes over  $\mathbb{F}_q$ , and let  $\mathcal{F}$  be an object of  $F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(U/\mathbb{L})$ . Then for every point  $x : \mathrm{Spec}(\mathbb{F}_{q^n}) \rightarrow V$  of degree  $n$  the homomorphism  $\mathrm{Gr}(\pi^*(\mathcal{F}), x) \rightarrow \mathrm{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, \pi(x))$  induced by pull-back with respect to  $\pi$  is an open immersion.*

*Proof.* Let  $\rho : W \rightarrow U$  be a finite, étale Galois cover which factorises as the composition of a finite, étale map  $\sigma : W \rightarrow V$  and  $\pi$ . Then  $\sigma$  is Galois, too. Fix a point  $y : \mathrm{Spec}(\mathbb{F}_{q^n}) \rightarrow W$  of degree  $n$ . The homomorphisms  $\mathrm{Gr}(\rho^*(\mathcal{F}), y)^\circ \rightarrow \mathrm{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, \rho(y))^\circ$  and  $\mathrm{Gr}(\rho^*(\mathcal{F}), y)^\circ = \mathrm{Gr}(\sigma^*(\pi^*(\mathcal{F})), y)^\circ \rightarrow \mathrm{Gr}(\pi^*(\mathcal{F}), \sigma(y))^\circ$  induced by  $\rho$  and  $\sigma$ , respectively, are isomorphisms by Proposition 4.20. So the same holds for the homomorphism  $\mathrm{Gr}(\pi^*(\mathcal{F}), \sigma(y))^\circ \rightarrow \mathrm{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, \rho(y))^\circ$  induced by  $\pi$ , too. Since it is enough to prove the claim for just one point  $x$ , the claim follows.  $\square$

**Corollary 4.22.** *Let  $\pi : V \rightarrow U$  and  $\mathcal{F}$  be as above. If  $\mathcal{F}$  is semi-simple, then so is  $\pi^*(\mathcal{F})$ .*

*Proof.* Since  $\pi^*(\mathcal{F}^{(n)}) \cong \pi^*(\mathcal{F})^{(n)}$ , we may assume that  $x$  above has degree one by switching to  $\mathcal{F}^{(n)}$  and using part (i) of Proposition 3.5. By assumption  $\mathrm{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, \pi(x))$  is reductive, therefore its open subgroup  $\mathrm{Gr}(\pi^*(\mathcal{F}), x)$  is also reductive. The claim now follows from Tannakian duality.  $\square$

Note that the pull-back functor:

$$\pi^* : F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(U/\mathbb{L}) \longrightarrow F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(V/\mathbb{L})$$

also induces a map

$$\mathrm{DGal}(\pi^*(\mathcal{F}), x) \longrightarrow \mathrm{DGal}(\mathcal{F}, \pi(x))$$

of Tannakian fundamental groups for every point  $x : \mathrm{Spec}(\mathbb{F}_{q^n}) \rightarrow V$  of degree  $n$ .

**Corollary 4.23.** *Assume in addition that  $\mathcal{F}$  is semi-simple. Then the homomorphism  $\mathrm{DGal}(\pi^*(\mathcal{F}), x) \longrightarrow \mathrm{DGal}(\mathcal{F}, \pi(x))$  is an open immersion.*

*Proof.* Since  $\pi^*(\mathcal{F})$  is semi-simple by Corollary 4.22, this follows at once from Corollary 4.21 and Proposition 4.12 applied to both  $\mathcal{F}$  and  $\pi^*(\mathcal{F})$ .  $\square$

Let  $\mathbb{L}'/\mathbb{L}$  be a finite totally ramified extension. In this case the identity map  $\sigma' : \mathbb{L}' \rightarrow \mathbb{L}'$  is still a lift of the  $q$ -power automorphism of  $k$ , so there is a functor  $\cdot \otimes_{\mathbb{L}} \mathbb{L}' : F_{\sigma}\text{-Isoc}^{\dagger}(X/\mathbb{L}) \rightarrow F_{\sigma'}\text{-Isoc}^{\dagger}(X/\mathbb{L}')$ .

**Lemma 4.24.** *Let  $X$  be a geometrically irreducible smooth scheme over  $\mathbb{F}_q$ , let  $\mathcal{F}$  be an object of  $F_{\sigma}\text{-Isoc}^{\dagger}(X/\mathbb{L})$  and let  $x$  be a closed point of  $X$  of degree  $n$ . Then we have:  $\mathrm{Gr}(\mathcal{F} \otimes_{\mathbb{L}} \mathbb{L}', x) \cong \mathrm{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, x) \otimes_{\mathbb{L}_n} \mathbb{L}'_n$ . If we also assume that  $\mathcal{F}^{\wedge}$  is semi-simple, then we have:  $\mathrm{DGal}(\mathcal{F} \otimes_{\mathbb{L}} \mathbb{L}', x) \cong \mathrm{DGal}(\mathcal{F}, x) \otimes_{\mathbb{L}_n} \mathbb{L}'_n$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $\pi : U \rightarrow X$  be an open affine sub-scheme containing  $x$ . Then by Theorem 3.2 the pull-back map  $\pi^*$  induces a pair of isomorphisms  $\mathrm{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, x) \cong \mathrm{Gr}(\pi^*(\mathcal{F}), x)$  and  $\mathrm{Gr}(\mathcal{F} \otimes_{\mathbb{L}} \mathbb{L}', x) \cong \mathrm{Gr}(\pi^*(\mathcal{F} \otimes_{\mathbb{L}} \mathbb{L}'), x)$ . Moreover  $\pi^*$  induces an  $\mathbb{L}$ -linear, respectively  $\mathbb{L}'$ -linear tensor equivalence between  $\langle\langle \mathcal{F} \rangle\rangle_{const}$  and  $\langle\langle \pi^*(\mathcal{F}) \rangle\rangle_{const}$ , respectively between  $\langle\langle \mathcal{F} \otimes_{\mathbb{L}} \mathbb{L}' \rangle\rangle_{const}$  and  $\langle\langle \pi^*(\mathcal{F} \otimes_{\mathbb{L}} \mathbb{L}') \rangle\rangle_{const}$ , and hence induces a pair of isomorphisms  $\mathrm{DGal}(\mathcal{F}, x) \cong \mathrm{DGal}(\pi^*(\mathcal{F}), x)$  and  $\mathrm{DGal}(\mathcal{F} \otimes_{\mathbb{L}} \mathbb{L}', x) \cong \mathrm{DGal}(\pi^*(\mathcal{F} \otimes_{\mathbb{L}} \mathbb{L}'), x)$  by Proposition 4.7 when  $\mathcal{F}^{\wedge}$  is semi-simple.

Therefore we may assume without the loss of generality that  $X$  is affine, and hence it has a compactification  $Y$  which has a formal lift  $\mathfrak{Y}$  to  $\mathrm{Spf}(\mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{L}})$  smooth in the neighbourhood of  $X$  which can be equipped with a lift of the  $q$ -power Frobenius compatible with  $\sigma$ . Let  $\mathfrak{Y}'$  be the base change of  $\mathfrak{Y}$  to  $\mathrm{Spf}(\mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{L}'})$ . The smooth and proper frames  $X \subseteq Y \hookrightarrow \mathfrak{Y}$  and  $X \subseteq Y \hookrightarrow \mathfrak{Y}'$  determine dagger algebras  $A, A'$  over  $\mathbb{L}$  and over  $\mathbb{L}'$ , respectively. Clearly  $A' = A \otimes_{\mathbb{L}} \mathbb{L}'$ . By assumption there is a lift of the  $q$ -power Frobenius  $F_{\sigma} : A \rightarrow A$  compatible with  $\sigma$ , and the unique  $\sigma'$ -linear extension  $F_{\sigma'} : A' \rightarrow A'$  of  $F_{\sigma}$  is also a lift of the  $q$ -power Frobenius.

As in the proof of Proposition 4.2 above, for any  $\mathbb{L}$ -linear Tannakian category  $\mathbf{T}$  let  $\mathbf{T}_{(\mathbb{L}')}$  denote the category of  $\mathbb{L}'$ -modules in  $\mathbf{T}$ . Using the construction in Proposition 3.11 of [15] we may attach an  $\mathbb{L}'_n$ -valued fibre functor  $\omega_x \otimes_{\mathbb{L}_n} \mathbb{L}'_n$  on  $F_{\sigma}\text{-Isoc}^{\dagger}(X/\mathbb{L})_{(\mathbb{L}')}$  to the  $\mathbb{L}_n$ -linear fibre functor  $\omega_x$  on  $F_{\sigma}\text{-Isoc}^{\dagger}(X/\mathbb{L})$ . In order to show the first claim it will be enough to show that there is an  $\mathbb{L}'$ -linear tensor-equivalence  $\epsilon : F_{\sigma}\text{-Isoc}^{\dagger}(X/\mathbb{L}') \rightarrow F_{\sigma}\text{-Isoc}^{\dagger}(X/\mathbb{L})_{(\mathbb{L}')}$  such that the composition  $\omega_x \otimes_{\mathbb{L}_n} \mathbb{L}'_n \circ \epsilon$  is just the fibre functor at  $x$ .

Recall that  $F_{\sigma}\text{-Isoc}^{\dagger}(X/\mathbb{L})$  and  $F_{\sigma}\text{-Isoc}^{\dagger}(X/\mathbb{L}')$  is the category of integrable  $(F_{\sigma}, \nabla)$ -modules over  $A$ , and the category of integrable  $(F_{\sigma'}, \nabla)$ -modules over  $A'$ , respectively. Under these identifications  $\epsilon$  is just the factor forgetful functor attaching to an integrable  $(F_{\sigma'}, \nabla)$ -module over  $A'$  the underlying  $(F_{\sigma}, \nabla)$ -module over  $A$ , and using the  $\mathbb{L}'$ -module structure to define the  $\mathbb{L}'$ -multiplication. The first claim is now clear. Note that  $\epsilon$  induces an equivalence between  $\langle\langle \mathcal{F} \otimes_{\mathbb{L}} \mathbb{L}' \rangle\rangle_{const}$  and  $(\langle\langle \mathcal{F} \rangle\rangle_{const})_{(\mathbb{L}')}$ , so the second claim follows from Proposition 4.7 when  $\mathcal{F}^{\wedge}$  is semi-simple.  $\square$

**Proposition 4.25.** *Let  $\mathcal{F}$  be a semi-simple object of  $F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(U/\mathbb{L})$ . Then there is a geometrically connected finite étale cover  $\pi : V \rightarrow U$  such that  $\text{DGal}(\pi^*(\mathcal{F}), x)$  is connected for any closed point  $x$  of  $V$ .*

*Remark 4.26.* It would be interesting to see a proof of a similar claim for overconvergent isocrystals, without using the Frobenius, but I do not know how to do this. In particular is it true that an overconvergent isocrystal with finite monodromy can be trivialised with a finite, étale map?

*Proof.* First note that we only need to prove a similar claim  $\mathcal{F}^{(d)}$  and  $U^{(d)}$  for some positive integer  $d$ . Indeed let  $\pi' : V' \rightarrow U^{(d)}$  be a geometrically connected finite étale cover such that  $\text{DGal}(\pi^*(\mathcal{F}), x)$  is connected for any closed point  $x$  of  $V$ . Because the étale fundamental group of the base change of  $U$  to  $\overline{\mathbb{F}}_q$  is topologically finitely generated, its open characteristic subgroups are cofinal, and hence there is a geometrically connected finite étale map  $\pi : V \rightarrow U$  such that its base change  $\pi^{(d)} : V^{(d)} \rightarrow U^{(d)}$  to  $\mathbb{F}_{q^d}$  can be factorised as the composition of a finite étale map  $\rho : V^{(d)} \rightarrow V'$  and  $\pi'$ . By Corollary 4.23 the group  $\text{DGal}(\pi^*(\mathcal{F}^{(d)}), x)$  is connected for any closed point  $x$  of  $V$ . Since  $\pi^*(\mathcal{F}^{(d)}) \cong \pi^*(\mathcal{F})^{(d)}$ , we get that the same holds for  $\mathcal{F}$ , too.

By the above we may assume that  $U$  has a degree one point  $x$ . Since  $\text{DGal}(\mathcal{F}, x)^\circ$  is an open characteristic subgroup of  $\text{DGal}(\mathcal{F}, x)$ , we get that  $\text{DGal}(\mathcal{F}, x)^\circ$  is a closed normal subgroup of  $\text{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, x)$ . By Tannaka duality there is an object of  $\langle\langle \mathcal{F} \rangle\rangle$  whose monodromy group is the quotient  $\text{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, x)/\text{DGal}(\mathcal{F}, x)^\circ$ . So we may assume without the loss of generality that  $\text{DGal}(\mathcal{F}, y)$  is finite for any closed point  $y$  of  $U$ . By Corollary 4.21 the same will hold for  $\pi^*(\mathcal{F})$  where  $\pi : V \rightarrow U$  is any geometrically connected finite étale cover. Therefore we may assume that  $\text{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, x)$  is connected, by taking a suitable finite étale cover  $\pi : V \rightarrow U$  and using Proposition 4.20.

Since  $\text{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, x)$  is connected, its derived group is also connected. Therefore by Proposition 4.12 this group is trivial, so the reductive group  $\text{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, x)$  must be a torus. After switching to  $\mathcal{F}^{(d)}$  for a suitable  $d$ , then taking a suitable finite extension  $\mathbb{L}'/\mathbb{L}$  such that the identity map  $\sigma' : \mathbb{L}' \rightarrow \mathbb{L}'$  is a lift of the  $q^d$ -power automorphism of  $k$ , and switching to  $\mathcal{F}^{(d)} \otimes_{\mathbb{L}} \mathbb{L}'$  and using Lemma 4.24 (recall that  $\mathcal{F}^\wedge$  is semi-simple by Proposition 3.9), we may even assume that  $\text{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, x)$  is a split torus. Using Tannaka duality we get that without the loss of generality we may assume that  $\mathcal{F} = \mathcal{F}_1 \oplus \mathcal{F}_2 \oplus \cdots \oplus \mathcal{F}_m$ , where  $\mathcal{F}_i$  is a rank one object of  $F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(U/\mathbb{L})$  for every index  $i$ . Note that it will be enough to show the proposition for each  $\mathcal{F}_i$  individually. In fact the fibre product of the covers which we have constructed for the  $\mathcal{F}_i$  will have the required property for each index  $i$  (by Corollary 4.21), and hence for  $\mathcal{F}$ , too. So we may assume without the loss of generality that  $\mathcal{F}$  has rank one.

Let  $x : \text{Spec}(\mathbb{F}_q) \rightarrow U$  be a closed point of degree one, and let  $\mathcal{F}_x$  be the fibre of  $\mathcal{F}$  over  $x$ . Let  $c : U \rightarrow \text{Spec}(\mathbb{F}_q)$  be the unique map, and let  $\mathcal{H}$  be the pull-back of  $\mathcal{F}_x$  onto  $U$ . If  $\mathcal{H}^\wedge$  denotes the dual of  $\mathcal{H}$ , then  $\mathcal{G} = \mathcal{F} \otimes \mathcal{H}^\wedge$  is a rank one object of  $F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(U/\mathbb{L})$  whose fibre over  $x$  is trivial. Therefore by the Grothendieck-Katz theorem (see [25]) the  $F$ -isocrystal  $\mathcal{G}$  is unit-root. Therefore by the Crew-Katz-Tsuzuki tensor equivalence and Proposition 4.20 there is a geometrically connected finite étale cover  $\pi : V \rightarrow U$  such that  $\pi^*(\mathcal{G})$  is a constant unit-root  $F$ -isocrystal.

Since  $\mathcal{F}^\vee \cong \mathcal{G}^\vee$ , we get that  $\pi(\mathcal{F})^\vee \cong \pi(\mathcal{F}^\vee) \cong \pi^*(\mathcal{G}^\vee) \cong \pi^*(\mathcal{G})^\vee$  is also trivial, and the claim follows.  $\square$

## 5. THE ISOGENY AND SEMI-SIMPLICITY CONJECTURES VIA $p$ -DIVISIBLE GROUPS

We are going to use the notation introduced in the introduction and in the previous section.

*Proof of Theorem 1.1.* In the commutative diagram below we let  $\beta$  and  $\gamma$  be induced by the functoriality of convergent Dieudonné modules for abelian varieties and for  $p$ -divisible groups, respectively, the map  $\psi$  is furnished by the forgetful map from the category of overconvergent  $F$ -isocrystals into the category of convergent  $F$ -isocrystals, the map  $\phi$  is induced by the functoriality of taking the  $p$ -divisible group of abelian varieties, while  $\rho$  is furnished by base change.

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \mathrm{Hom}(A, B) \otimes \mathbb{Q}_p & & \\
 \downarrow \phi & \searrow \alpha & \\
 \mathrm{Hom}(A[p^\infty], B[p^\infty]) \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_p} \mathbb{Q}_p & & \mathrm{Hom}(D^\dagger(A), D^\dagger(B)) \\
 \downarrow \rho & \searrow \beta & \downarrow \psi \\
 \mathrm{Hom}(A_L[p^\infty], B_L[p^\infty]) \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_p} \mathbb{Q}_p & & \mathrm{Hom}(D(A), D(B)) \\
 & \searrow \gamma & 
 \end{array}$$

By de Jong's theorem (Theorem 2.6 of [13] on page 305) the composition  $\rho \circ \phi$  is an isomorphism. Since the map  $\rho$  is injective, we get that  $\phi$  is an isomorphism, too. By another theorem of de Jong (Main Theorem 2 of [12] on page 6) the map  $\gamma$  is bijective. Therefore the composition  $\beta$  is an isomorphism, too. By the global version of Kedlaya's full faithfulness theorem (see [27]) the map  $\psi$  is also an isomorphism. Therefore the map  $\alpha$  must be an isomorphism, too.  $\square$

**Lemma 5.1.** *Let  $\pi : X \rightarrow Y$  a finite, étale, Galois map of smooth schemes over  $\mathbb{F}_q$  with Galois group  $G$ . Let  $\mathcal{F}$  be an object of the category  $F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(Y/\mathbb{L})$  and let  $s$  be a horizontal section of  $\pi^*(\mathcal{F})$  which is invariant with respect to the natural  $G$ -action. Then  $s$  is the pull-back of a horizontal section of  $\mathcal{F}$  with respect to  $f$ .*

*Proof.* There is a short exact sequence:

$$0 \longrightarrow \mathcal{F} \longrightarrow \pi_*(\pi^*(\mathcal{F})) \longrightarrow \pi_*(\pi^*(\mathcal{F}))/\mathcal{F} \longrightarrow 0$$

of overconvergent  $F$ -isocrystals which gives rise to the cohomological exact sequence:

$$0 \longrightarrow H_{rig}^0(Y, \mathcal{F}) \xrightarrow{\pi_* \circ \pi^*} H_{rig}^0(Y, \pi_*(\pi^*(\mathcal{F}))) \xrightarrow{\gamma} H_{rig}^0(Y, \pi_*(\pi^*(\mathcal{F}))/\mathcal{F}).$$

Since the map  $\pi_* : H_{rig}^0(X, \pi^*(\mathcal{F})) \rightarrow H_{rig}^0(Y, \pi_*(\pi^*(\mathcal{F})))$  is injective, it will be enough to show that the image  $\pi_*(s)$  under the map  $\gamma$  is zero. It is enough to verify that  $\gamma(\pi_*(s))$  vanishes in the fibre of  $\pi^*(\mathcal{F}))/\mathcal{F}$  over each closed point of  $Y$ . Therefore by the naturality of the maps  $\pi_*$  and  $\pi^*$  we may reduce to the situation when  $X$  and  $Y$  are zero-dimensional. In this case the claim is obvious.  $\square$

For every function field  $K$  of transcendence degree one over  $\mathbb{F}_q$  let  $\mathcal{C}_K$  denote the unique irreducible smooth projective curve whose function field is  $K$ . When  $K = L$  we will sometimes let  $\mathcal{C}$  denote  $\mathcal{C}_L$ , for the sake of avoiding overburdened notation.

**Lemma 5.2.** *We may assume that  $A_L$  has semi-stable reduction over  $\mathcal{C}_L$  in the course of the proof of Theorem 1.2 without the loss of generality.*

*Proof.* By the semi-stable reduction theorem there is a finite separable extension  $K$  of  $L$  such that  $A_K$  has semi-stable reduction over  $\mathcal{C}_K$ . We may assume that  $K/L$  is a finite Galois extension, since the base change  $A_J$  of  $A_K$  will have semi-stable reduction over  $\mathcal{C}_J$  for any finite separable extension  $J$  of  $K$ , too. Let  $G$  denote the Galois group of  $K/L$ . Let  $\pi : \mathcal{C}_K \rightarrow \mathcal{C}_L$  be the map corresponding to the extension  $K/L$  and let  $V = \pi^{-1}(U)$ . Let  $A'$  denote the base change of  $A$  to  $V$ . By the naturality of the Dieudonné functor we have  $D^\dagger(A') = \pi^*(D^\dagger(A))$ . Let  $\mathcal{F} \subseteq D^\dagger(A)$  be a sub  $F$ -isocrystal. There is a projection operator  $P : D^\dagger(A') \rightarrow D^\dagger(A')$  with image  $\pi^*(\mathcal{F})$  by assumption. Moreover there is a natural action  $G$  on  $D^\dagger(A')$  covering the Galois action on  $\mathcal{C}_K$ . Since this action leaves  $\pi^*(\mathcal{F})$  invariant, we may argue similarly to the proof of Proposition 3.5 to conclude that the operator  $P'$  which we get from  $P$  by averaging out the action of  $G$  will be a projection operator with image  $\pi^*(\mathcal{F})$ , too. Since  $P'$  is invariant under the action of  $G$ , by Lemma 5.1 applied to the overconvergent  $F$ -isocrystal  $\text{End}(D^\dagger(A))$  and the map  $\pi$  we get that  $P$  is the pull-back of an endomorphism of  $D^\dagger(A)$  with respect to  $\pi$ . This must be a projection operator with kernel  $\mathcal{F}$ .  $\square$

**Definition 5.3.** Recall that for every function field  $K$  of transcendence degree one over  $\mathbb{F}_q$  the set of closed points  $|\mathcal{C}_K|$  of  $\mathcal{C}_K$  is in a natural bijection with the set  $|K|$  of places of  $K$ . We say that a  $p$ -divisible subgroup  $G$  over  $U$  has semi-stable reduction if for every  $x \in |\mathcal{C}_L|$  in the complement of  $U$  the base change of  $G$  to  $L_x$  has semi-stable reduction. Similarly we say that an abelian scheme  $A$  over  $U$  has semi-stable reduction such that for every  $x \in |\mathcal{C}_L|$  in the complement of  $U$  the base change of  $A$  to  $L_x$  has semi-stable reduction.

**Proposition 5.4.** *Let  $A$  be an abelian scheme over  $U$  with semi-stable reduction, and let  $\mathcal{F} \subseteq D^\dagger(A)$  be a overconvergent sub  $F$ -isocrystal. Then there is a  $p$ -divisible subgroup  $G \subset A[p^\infty]$  which has semi-stable reduction such that  $D(G) = \mathcal{F}^\sim$ .*

*Proof.* Note that there is a sub Dieudonné-module  $\mathbf{F} \subseteq \mathbf{D}(A)$  such that  $\mathbf{F} \otimes \mathbb{Q}_q = \mathcal{F}^\sim$ . Because the Dieudonné functor is an equivalence of categories over regular schemes which are of finite type over a finite field (see Main Theorem 1 of [12] on page 6) there is a  $p$ -divisible subgroup  $G \subset A[p^\infty]$  such that  $\mathbf{D}(G) = \mathbf{F}$ , and hence  $D(G) = \mathcal{F}^\sim$ . We only need to show that  $G$  has semi-stable reduction. By 2.5 of [13] on page 304 the base change  $H = A_{L_x}[p^\infty]$  of the  $p$ -divisible group  $A[p^\infty]$  to  $L_x$  has semi-stable reduction, for every  $x \in |\mathcal{C}_L|$  in the complement of  $U$ . The claim now follows from Theorem 2.22.  $\square$

For every abelian scheme  $A$  over  $U$  we are going to introduce a vector bundle  $\omega_A$  as follows. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be the Néron model of  $A_L$  over  $\mathcal{C}_L$  extending  $A$ . Let  $\omega_A$  denote the  $\mathcal{O}_{\mathcal{C}_L}$ -dual of the pull-back of the sheaf of Kähler differentials  $\Omega_{\mathcal{A}/\mathcal{C}_L}^1$  with respect to the identity section  $\mathcal{C}_L \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$ .

**Theorem 5.5.** *Let  $A$  be an abelian scheme over  $U$  with semi-stable reduction, and let  $G \subset A[p^\infty]$  be a  $p$ -divisible subgroup which has semi-stable reduction. For every  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  let  $B_n = A/G[p^n]$  be the abelian scheme that is the quotient of  $A$  by the  $p^n$ -torsion of  $G$ . Then the line bundles  $\det(\omega_{B_n})$  are all isomorphic.*

*Proof.* First we are going to construct a generalisation of the sheaf  $\omega_A$  for  $p$ -divisible subgroups with semi-stable reduction, following de Jong. For every place  $v$  of  $L$  not in  $U$  let  $R_v$  denote the complete local ring of  $\mathcal{C}_L$  at  $v$ . For every such  $v$  and for every scheme or ind-scheme  $S$  over  $U$  let  $S_v$  denote the base change of  $S$  to  $\text{Spec}(L_v)$ . Let  $H$  be a  $p$ -divisible group over  $U$  with semi-stable reduction. For every  $v$  as above let

$$0 \subseteq H_v^\mu \subseteq H_v^f \subseteq H_v$$

be a filtration by  $p$ -divisible groups of the type considered in Definition 2.21 and let  $H_{v,1}$  denote the unique  $p$ -divisible group over  $\text{Spec}(R_v)$  extending  $H_v^f$ . Let  $\omega_H$  denote the coherent sheaf on  $\mathcal{C}_L$  which we get by gluing  $\text{Lie}(H)$ , a coherent sheaf on  $U$ , with the sheaves  $\text{Lie}(H_{v,1})$ , coherent sheaves on  $\text{Spec}(R_v)$ , over  $\text{Spec}(L_v)$  for every  $v$  as above. This is possible because the map  $\text{Lie}(H_v^f) \rightarrow \text{Lie}(H_v)$  induced by the inclusion  $H_v^f \subseteq H_v$  is an isomorphism, since the quotient  $H_v/H_v^f$  is étale. It is easy to see that  $\omega_H$  is independent of any choices made and for every abelian scheme  $A$  over  $U$  with semi-stable reduction we have  $\omega_A = \omega_{A[p^\infty]}$ .

Now let us start the proof of the theorem; we will essentially repeat the argument in [13], Theorem 2.6. Note that we have an exact sequence of truncated Barsotti-Tate group schemes of level 1 over  $U$  as follows:

$$0 \longrightarrow G[p] \longrightarrow A[p] \longrightarrow B_n[p] \longrightarrow G[p] \longrightarrow 0,$$

so there is an exact sequence

$$0 \longrightarrow \text{Lie}(G) \longrightarrow \text{Lie}(A) \longrightarrow \text{Lie}(B_n) \longrightarrow \text{Lie}(G) \longrightarrow 0$$

of coherent  $\mathcal{O}_U$ -sheaves. In order to avoid overloading the notation let  $\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B}_n$  denote the  $p$ -divisible group  $A[p^\infty], B_n[p^\infty]$  of  $A$  and  $B_n$ , respectively. For every  $v$  as above choose a filtration:

$$(5.5.1) \quad 0 \subseteq \mathbf{A}_v^\mu \subseteq \mathbf{A}_v^f \subseteq \mathbf{A}_v$$

by  $p$ -divisible groups of the type considered in Definition 2.21. As we noted in the proof of Theorem 2.22 the filtration:

$$0 \subseteq G_v \cap \mathbf{A}_v^\mu \subseteq G_v \cap \mathbf{A}_v^f \subseteq G_v \cap \mathbf{A}_v$$

which we get by scheme-theoretical intersection is also of the type considered in Definition 2.21. Moreover the image of the filtration (5.5.1) under the map  $\mathbf{A} \rightarrow \mathbf{B}_n$  induced by the isogeny  $A \rightarrow B_n$  is a filtration:

$$0 \subseteq (\mathbf{B}_n)_v^\mu \subseteq (\mathbf{B}_n)_v^f \subseteq (\mathbf{B}_n)_v$$

by  $p$ -divisible groups of the type considered in Definition 2.21. Let  $G_{v,1}, \mathbf{A}_{v,1}, \mathbf{B}_{n,v,1}$  denote the unique  $p$ -divisible group over  $\text{Spec}(R_v)$  extending  $G_v \cap \mathbf{A}_v^f, \mathbf{A}_v^f, (\mathbf{B}_n)_v^f$ , respectively. By construction there is an exact sequence of truncated Barsotti-Tate group schemes of level 1 over  $\text{Spec}(R_v)$  as follows:

$$0 \rightarrow G_{v,1}[p] \longrightarrow \mathbf{A}_{v,1}[p] \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}_{n,v,1}[p] \longrightarrow G_{v,1}[p] \rightarrow 0,$$

so there is an exact sequence

$$0 \rightarrow \text{Lie}(G_{v,1}) \longrightarrow \text{Lie}(\mathbf{A}_{v,1}) \longrightarrow \text{Lie}(\mathbf{B}_{n,v,1}) \longrightarrow \text{Lie}(G_{v,1}) \rightarrow 0$$

of coherent sheaves on  $\text{Spec}(R_v)$ . By patching these exact sequences of coherent sheaves together we get that there is an exact sequence

$$0 \longrightarrow \omega_G \longrightarrow \omega_A \longrightarrow \omega_{B_n} \longrightarrow \omega_G \longrightarrow 0$$



of coherent  $\mathcal{O}_{\mathcal{C}_L}$ -sheaves. The latter implies that  $\det(\omega_{B_n}) \cong \det(\omega_A)$  is independent of  $n$ , and so the theorem follows.  $\square$

As explained in Section 5 of [20] that the theorem above has the following

**Corollary 5.6.** *Let  $A, G$  and  $B_n = A/G[p^n]$  be as above. Then there is an infinite set  $S \subseteq \mathbb{N}$  such that the abelian varieties  $\{B_n | n \in S\}$  are all isomorphic.*  $\square$

*Proof of Theorem 1.2.* This argument is essentially the same as Faltings's and Zarhin's, so we include it for the reader's convenience. We may assume that  $A_L$  has semi-stable reduction over  $\mathcal{C}_L$  without the loss of generality by Lemma 5.2. Let  $\mathcal{F} \subseteq D^\dagger(A)$  be an overconvergent sub  $F$ -isocrystal. We only need to show that there is an endomorphism of  $D^\dagger(A)$  whose kernel is  $\mathcal{F}$ . There is a semi-stable  $p$ -divisible subgroup  $G \subset A[p^\infty]$  such that  $D(G) = \mathcal{F}^\sim$  by Proposition 5.4. For every  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  let  $B_n = A/G[p^n]$  be the abelian variety that is the quotient of  $A$  by the  $p^n$ -torsion of  $G$ . Let  $f_n : A \rightarrow B_n$  be the quotient map for every  $n$ . Then there is an infinite set  $S \subseteq \mathbb{N}$  such that the abelian varieties  $\{B_n | n \in S\}$  are all isomorphic by Corollary 5.6. Let  $i$  be the smallest element of  $S$ . For each  $n \in S$  choose an isomorphism  $v_n : B_n \rightarrow B_i$ . Because  $f_i$  is an isogeny the composition  $u_n = f_i^{-1} \circ v_n \circ f_n$  is well-defined as an element of  $\text{End}(A) \otimes \mathbb{Q}$ , and hence as an element of  $\text{End}(A) \otimes \mathbb{Q}_p$ . Choose a positive integer  $d$  such that  $U(\mathbb{F}_{q^d}) \neq \emptyset$  and fix an  $\mathbb{F}_{q^d}$ -rational point  $x \in U(\mathbb{F}_{q^d})$ . For every abelian scheme  $C$  over  $U$  let  $C_x$  denote the fibre of  $C$  over  $x$ . By the above for every  $n \in S$  the map  $u_n$  induces an endomorphism of the  $F$ -isocrystal  $D(A_x)$  over  $\mathbb{F}_{q^d}$  and the image of the  $\mathbb{Z}_{q^d}$ -lattice  $\mathbf{D}(A_x) \subset D(A_x)$  under this homomorphism lies in  $(f_i)_*^{-1} \mathbf{D}((B_i)_x) \subset \mathbf{D}(A_x) \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{q^d}} \mathbb{Q}_{q^d}$ . Therefore as a subset of  $\text{End}(D(A_x) \otimes \mathbb{Q}_{q^d})$  the set  $\{u_n | n \in S\}$  is bounded, so after possibly replacing  $S$  with an infinite subset, we may assume that the sequence  $\{u_n | n \in S\}$  converges to a limit  $u$  in  $\text{End}(D(A_x))$ . However  $\text{End}(A) \otimes \mathbb{Q}_p$  is a  $\mathbb{Q}_p$ -linear subspace of  $\text{End}(D(A_x))$ , and hence it is closed. Since every  $u_n$  lies in  $\text{End}(A) \otimes \mathbb{Q}_p$ , so does their limit  $u$ , too.

As we noted above for every  $n \in S$  the map  $u_n$  furnishes a homomorphism:

$$\mathbf{D}(u_n) : \mathbf{D}(A_x) \longrightarrow \mathbf{D}((B_i)_x) \cong (f_i)_*^{-1} \mathbf{D}((B_i)_x),$$

and by taking a limit we get that the action of  $u$  restricted to the lattice  $\mathbf{D}(A_x)$  is a map  $\mathbf{D}(A_x) \rightarrow \mathbf{D}((B_i)_x)$ . Let  $m$  be any positive integer. Then for every  $n \in S$  such that  $n \geq m$  the map:

$$\mathbf{D}(A_x)/p^m \mathbf{D}(A_x) \longrightarrow \mathbf{D}((B_i)_x)/p^m \mathbf{D}((B_i)_x)$$

induced by  $\mathbf{D}(u_n)$  above has kernel  $(\mathbf{D}(G_x) + p^m \mathbf{D}(A_x))/p^m \mathbf{D}(A_x)$  where  $G_x$  denotes the fibre of  $G$  over  $x$ . By taking the limit we get that the same holds for the map induced by  $u$ . Since  $m$  is arbitrary we can conclude that the kernel of the map  $\mathbf{D}(A_x) \rightarrow \mathbf{D}((B_i)_x)$  induced by  $u$  has kernel  $\mathbf{D}(G_x)$ . Therefore the kernel of the action of  $u$  on the fibre  $\omega_x(D^\dagger(A)) \cong \mathbf{D}(A_x) \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{q^d}} \mathbb{Q}_{q^d}$  is  $\omega_x(\mathcal{F}) \cong \mathbf{D}(G_x) \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{q^d}} \mathbb{Q}_{q^d}$ . Because  $\omega_x$  is faithful we get that the kernel of  $u$  as an endomorphism of  $D^\dagger(A)$  is  $\mathcal{F}$ , and hence the claim is true.  $\square$

## 6. CYCLE CLASSES INTO RIGID COHOMOLOGY OVER FUNCTION FIELDS

**Notation 6.1.** For every quasi-projective variety  $X$  over an arbitrary field  $k$  let  $Z_r(X)$  denote the group of algebraic cycles of dimension  $r$  on  $X$ , that is, the free abelian group generated by prime cycles of dimension  $r$ , where recall that a prime

cycle on  $X$  is an irreducible closed subvariety. Let  $CH_r(X)$  denote the homological Chow group of algebraic cycles of  $X$  of dimension  $r$  modulo rational equivalence in the sense of Fulton (see [21]). Assume now that  $X$  is smooth. Let  $CH^r(X)$  denote the cohomological Chow group of algebraic cycles of  $X$  of codimension  $r$  modulo usual rational equivalence, and let  $CH^*(X) = \bigoplus_{r=0}^{\infty} CH^r(X)$  denote the Chow ring of  $X$ ; it is a graded ring with respect to the intersection product:

$$\cap : CH^r(X) \times CH^s(X) \longrightarrow CH^{r+s}(X).$$

**Notation 6.2.** For every smooth projective variety  $X$  over an arbitrary field  $k$  let  $CH_A^r(X)$  denote the quotient of  $CH^r(X)$  by the subgroup  $ACH^r(X)$  generated by the rational equivalence classes of cycles algebraically equivalent to zero. Let  $a_X : CH^r(X) \rightarrow CH_A^r(X)$  denote the quotient map. Similarly let  $CH_{SN}^r(X)$  denote the quotient of  $CH^r(X)$  by the subgroup  $SNCH^r(X)$  generated by the rational equivalence classes of cycles smash-nilpotent to zero, and let  $s_X : CH^r(X) \rightarrow CH_{SN}^r(X)$  denote the quotient map. By a theorem Voevodsky, who introduced this concept, we have  $ACH^r(X) \subset SNCH^r(X)$  (see [46]). Note that  $CH^1(X) = \text{Pic}(X)$ , the Picard group of  $X$ , while  $CH_A^1(X) = NS(X)$ , the Néron–Severi group of  $X$ . According to the Néron–Severi theorem the abelian group  $NS(X)$  is finitely generated.

**Definition 6.3.** Again let  $k$  be a perfect field of characteristic  $p$  and let  $\mathbb{K}$  denote the field of fractions of the ring of Witt vectors  $\mathcal{O}$  of  $k$ . For every quasi-projective variety  $X$  over  $k$  let  $H_{rig,c}^n(X/\mathbb{K})$  denote Berthelot’s  $n$ -th rigid cohomology of  $X$  with compact support and having coefficients in  $\mathbb{K}$ . Following [39] we define the  $n$ -th rigid homology group of  $X$  as

$$H_n^{rig}(X/\mathbb{K}) = \text{Hom}_{\mathbb{K}}(H_{rig,c}^n(X/\mathbb{K}), \mathbb{K}),$$

where  $\text{Hom}_{\mathbb{K}}$  denotes the group of  $\mathbb{K}$ -linear maps. Rigid homology furnishes a covariant functor from the category of quasi-projective varieties over  $k$  into finite dimensional  $\mathbb{K}$ -linear vector spaces.

**Definition 6.4.** Let  $Z$  be an integral quasi-projective variety of dimension  $d$  over  $k$ . In [6] a trace homomorphism:

$$\text{Tr}_Z : H_{rig,c}^{2d}(Z/\mathbb{K}) \rightarrow \mathbb{K}$$

is constructed. We will let  $\eta_Z \in H_{2d}^{rig}(Z/\mathbb{K})$  denote the corresponding element and call it the fundamental class of  $Z$ . For every cycle  $z = \sum_i n_i T_i \in Z_r(X)$ , where  $n_i$  are integers and  $T_i \subseteq X$  are prime cycles, let

$$\gamma_X(z) = \sum_i n_i \alpha_{i*}(\eta_{T_i}) \in H_{2r}^{rig}(X/\mathbb{K}),$$

where  $\alpha_i : T_i \rightarrow X$  are the closed immersions of these prime cycles into  $X$  and  $\alpha_{i*} : H_{2r}^{rig}(T_i/\mathbb{K}) \rightarrow H_{2r}^{rig}(X/\mathbb{K})$  are the induced maps.

We will need the following result of Petrequin:

**Proposition 6.5.** *Let  $X$  be as above, and let  $z \in Z_r(X)$  be a cycle rationally equivalent to zero in the sense of Fulton. Then  $\gamma_X(z) = 0$ . Therefore the cycle class map  $\gamma_X$  factors through the quotient map  $Z_r(X) \rightarrow CH_r(X)$ , and hence furnishes a homomorphism:*

$$CH_r(X) \longrightarrow H_{2r}^{rig}(X/\mathbb{K}),$$

which we will denote by the same symbol  $\gamma_X$  by slight abuse of notation.

*Proof.* This is the content of Proposition 6.10 of [39] on page 111.  $\square$

**Definition 6.6.** Assume now that  $X$  is smooth and equidimensional of dimension  $d$ . By slight abuse of notation let  $\gamma_X : CH^r(X) \rightarrow H_{rig}^{2r}(X/\mathbb{K})$  denote the composition of the identification  $CH^r(X) \cong CH_{d-r}(X)$ , the cycle class map  $\gamma_X : CH_{d-r}(X) \rightarrow H_{2(d-r)}^{rig}(X/\mathbb{K})$  and the isomorphism  $H_{2(d-r)}^{rig}(X/\mathbb{K}) \rightarrow H_{rig}^{2r}(X/\mathbb{K})$  furnished by Poincaré duality (see [6]).

We will also need the following two additional results of Perlequin:

**Theorem 6.7.** *Let  $X$  be as above. Then*

(a) *for every  $x \in CH^r(X)$  and  $y \in CH^s(X)$  we have:*

$$\gamma_X(x \cap y) = \gamma_X(x) \cup \gamma_X(y) \in H_{rig}^{2r+2s}(X/\mathbb{K}).$$

*In other words the map*

$$\gamma_X : CH^*(X) \longrightarrow H_{rig}^*(X/\mathbb{K})$$

*is a ring homomorphism.*

(b) *for every morphism  $f : Y \rightarrow X$  between smooth equidimensional varieties over  $k$ , and for every  $z \in CH^*(X)$  we have:*

$$f^*(\gamma_X(z)) = \gamma_Y(f^*(z)).$$

*Proof.* The rigid cycle class map is a ring homomorphism by Corollaire 7.6 of [39] on page 115, and it is natural by Proposition 7.7 of [39] on the same page.  $\square$

**Proposition 6.8.** *Let  $X$  be as above. Then  $\gamma_X : CH^r(X) \rightarrow H_{rig}^{2r}(X/\mathbb{K})$  factors through  $s_X : CH^r(X) \rightarrow CH_{SN}^r(X)$ , and hence furnishes a homomorphism:*

$$\sigma_X : CH_{SN}^r(X) \longrightarrow H_{rig}^{2r}(X/\mathbb{K}).$$

*Proof.* We include this well-known argument for the reader's convenience. Let  $z$  be a cycle of codimension  $r$  on  $X$  smash-nilpotent to zero. By definition there is a positive integer  $n$  such that the  $n$ -fold smash product  $z^{\otimes n}$  on the  $n$ -fold direct product  $X^n = X \times X \times \cdots \times X$  is rationally equivalent to zero. By Theorem 6.7 we have:

$$\gamma_{X^n}(z^{\otimes n}) = \pi_1^*(\gamma_X(z)) \cup \pi_2^*(\gamma_X(z)) \cup \cdots \cup \pi_n^*(\gamma_X(z)),$$

where  $\pi_i : X^n \rightarrow X$  is the projection onto the  $i$ -th factor. Since  $z^{\otimes n}$  is rationally equivalent to zero, the left hand side is zero by Proposition 6.5. By the Künneth formula for rigid cohomology (see [6]) the map:

$$H_{rig}^{2r}(X/\mathbb{K}) \otimes_{\mathbb{K}} \cdots \otimes_{\mathbb{K}} H_{rig}^{2r}(X/\mathbb{K}) \longrightarrow H_{rig}^{2rn}(X^n/\mathbb{K})$$

given by the rule:

$$x_1 \otimes_{\mathbb{K}} x_2 \otimes_{\mathbb{K}} \cdots \otimes_{\mathbb{K}} x_n \mapsto \pi_1^*(x_1) \cup \pi_2^*(x_2) \cup \cdots \cup \pi_n^*(x_n)$$

is injective. The claim now follows.  $\square$

Note that when  $X$  is projective then  $H_{rig,c}^{2d}(X/\mathbb{K}) = H_{rig}^{2d}(X/\mathbb{K})$ , and hence we have a trace homomorphism:

$$\mathrm{Tr}_X : H_{rig}^{2d}(X/\mathbb{K}) \rightarrow \mathbb{K}.$$

Because rigid cohomology is a Weil cohomology with respect to this cycle map, we have the following

**Proposition 6.9.** *Let  $X$  be as above. Then the diagram:*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} CH_0(X) & \xrightarrow{\gamma_X} & H_{rig}^{2d}(X/\mathbb{K}) \\ \downarrow \text{deg} & & \downarrow \text{Tr}_X \\ \mathbb{Z} & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \mathbb{K} \end{array}$$

*commutes, where deg denotes the degree map.*

*Proof.* This follows immediately from Proposition 2.8 of [39] on page 69.  $\square$

**Definition 6.10.** Equip  $\mathbb{K}$  with natural lift of the  $p$ -power Frobenius. For every quasi-projective variety  $V$  over  $k$  let  $\mathcal{O}_V^\dagger$  denote the trivial overconvergent  $F$ -isocrystal (with coefficients in  $\mathbb{K}$ ). Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a smooth, projective, geometrically irreducible curve over  $k$  and let  $L$  denote its function field. Let  $X$  be a smooth, projective variety over  $L$ . Let  $\pi : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow U$  be a projective, smooth morphism of  $k$ -schemes where  $U$  is a non-empty Zariski-open sub-curve of  $\mathcal{C}$  and the generic fibre of  $\pi$  is isomorphic to  $X$ . (Note that such a map  $\pi : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow U$  always exists.) Let  $\mathcal{H}^n(X/\mathbb{K})$  denote  $H_{rig}^0(U, R^n \pi_* (\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger))$ . Because  $g$  is smooth and projective the overholonomic  $F$ - $\mathcal{D}$ -module  $R^n \pi_* (\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger)$  is an overconvergent  $F$ -isocrystal, and hence the cohomology group above is a finite dimensional  $\mathbb{K}$ -linear vector space.

**Proposition 6.11.** *The  $\mathbb{K}$ -linear vector space  $\mathcal{H}^n(X/\mathbb{K})$  is independent of the choice of  $\pi : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow U$ , up to a natural isomorphism, and the correspondence  $X \mapsto \mathcal{H}^n(X/\mathbb{K})$  is a contravariant functor.*

*Proof.* We are going to define a category  $\mathcal{I}$  as follows. Its objects  $\text{Ob}(\mathcal{I})$  are quadruples  $(U, \mathfrak{X}, \pi, \phi)$ , where  $U$  is a non-empty Zariski-open sub-curve of  $\mathcal{C}$ , moreover  $\pi : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow U$  is a projective, smooth morphism of  $k$ -schemes, and  $\phi$  is an isomorphism  $\mathfrak{X}_L \rightarrow X$  of  $L$ -schemes between the generic fibre  $\mathfrak{X}_L$  of  $\pi$  and  $X$ . A morphism of  $\mathcal{I}$  between two objects  $(U, \mathfrak{X}, \pi, \phi)$  and  $(U', \mathfrak{X}', \pi', \phi')$  is an isomorphism

$$\iota : i^*(\mathfrak{X}) \longrightarrow \mathfrak{X}'$$

of schemes over  $U'$ , where  $U$  contains  $U'$  as an open sub-curve, the morphism  $i : U' \rightarrow U$  is the inclusion map, and the  $U'$ -scheme  $i^*(\mathfrak{X})$  is the base-change of  $\mathfrak{X}$  with respect to  $i$ , such that the diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathfrak{X}_L & \xrightarrow{\iota_L} & \mathfrak{X}'_L \\ \downarrow \phi & & \downarrow \phi' \\ X & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_X} & X \end{array}$$

is commutative, where  $\iota_L$  is the base change of  $\iota$  to  $\text{Spec}(L)$ . The composition  $\kappa \circ \iota$  of a morphism  $\iota$  from  $(U, \mathfrak{X}, \pi, \phi)$  to  $(U', \mathfrak{X}', \pi', \phi')$  and a morphism  $\kappa$  from  $(U', \mathfrak{X}', \pi', \phi')$  to  $(U'', \mathfrak{X}'', \pi'', \phi'')$  is defined as the composition of

$$\iota_{U''} : (i' \circ i)^*(\mathfrak{X}) \longrightarrow (i')^*(\mathfrak{X}'),$$

the base change of  $\iota$  to  $U''$  with respect to the inclusion map  $i' : U'' \rightarrow U'$  and  $\kappa$ . Then there is a functor from  $\mathcal{I}$  into the category of finite-dimensional  $\mathbb{K}$ -linear vector spaces which assigns to every object  $(U, \mathfrak{X}, \pi, \phi)$  to the vector space

$H_{rig}^0(U, R^n \pi_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger))$ , and to every morphism  $\iota$  from  $(U, \mathfrak{X}, \pi, \phi)$  to  $(U', \mathfrak{X}', \pi', \phi')$  the composition  $\mathcal{H}^n(\iota)$  of the restriction map:

$$H_{rig}^0(U, R^n \pi_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger)) \longrightarrow H_{rig}^0(U', R^n \pi'_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}'}^\dagger))$$

and the map:

$$H_{rig}^0(U', R^n \pi'_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}'}^\dagger)) \longrightarrow H_{rig}^0(U', R^n \pi'_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}'}^\dagger))$$

induced by  $\iota$ . By (the global version of) de Jong's full faithfulness theorem (see Theorem 2.9) for every  $\iota$  as above the  $\mathbb{K}$ -linear map  $\mathcal{H}^n(\iota)$  is an isomorphism. Clearly  $\mathcal{I}$  is filtering, so the limit:

$$(6.11.1) \quad \mathcal{H}^n(X/\mathbb{K}) = \lim_{(V, \mathfrak{Y}, \rho, \lambda) \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{I})} H_{rig}^0(V, R^n \rho_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{Y}}^\dagger)),$$

with  $\mathcal{I}$  as an index category, is well-defined, and for every  $(U, \mathfrak{X}, \pi, \phi) \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{I})$  the natural map:

$$(6.11.2) \quad H_{rig}^0(U, R^n \pi_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger)) \longrightarrow \lim_{(V, \mathfrak{Y}, \rho, \lambda) \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{I})} H_{rig}^0(V, R^n \rho_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{Y}}^\dagger)),$$

is an isomorphism. The first half of the proposition follows. Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be map between smooth, projective varieties over  $L$ . Then there is a non-empty Zariski-open sub-curve  $U$  of  $\mathcal{C}$ , two smooth, projective morphisms  $\pi : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow U$ ,  $\rho : \mathfrak{Y} \rightarrow U$  of  $k$ -schemes, and a morphism  $\mathfrak{f} : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow \mathfrak{Y}$  of  $U$ -schemes such that the base change of  $\mathfrak{f}$  to  $\text{Spec}(L)$  is isomorphic to  $f$ . The map  $\mathfrak{f}$  induces a homomorphism:

$$H_{rig}^0(U, R^n \pi_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger)) \longrightarrow H_{rig}^0(U, R^n \rho_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{Y}}^\dagger))$$

which via the isomorphism (6.11.2) furnishes a homomorphism:

$$\mathcal{H}^n(f) : \mathcal{H}^n(X/\mathbb{K}) \longrightarrow \mathcal{H}^n(Y/\mathbb{K})$$

which is independent of the choices of  $U, \mathfrak{X}, \mathfrak{Y}, \mathfrak{f}$  and only depends on  $f$ . Equipped with these morphisms the correspondence  $X \mapsto \mathcal{H}^n(X/\mathbb{K})$  acquires the structure of a functor, so the second half of the proposition is also true.  $\square$

*Remark 6.12.* Strictly speaking one should think of (6.11.1) as the definition of  $\mathcal{H}^*(X/\mathbb{K})$ . Perhaps it is also worth remarking that although it has many of its additional structures, as we will see below, the functor  $X \mapsto \mathcal{H}^*(X/\mathbb{K})$  is not a Weil cohomology theory.

**Definition 6.13.** Let  $\pi : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow U$  be as above. Note that the usual multiplication map  $\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger \otimes \mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger$ , where  $\otimes$  denotes the tensor product of overconvergent  $F$ -isocrystals, induces a map:

$$R^j \pi_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger) \otimes R^n \pi_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger) \longrightarrow R^{j+n} \pi_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger)$$

of derived functors, which by taking sections induces a  $\mathbb{K}$ -bilinear pairing:

$$H_{rig}^0(U, R^j \pi_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger)) \otimes_{\mathbb{K}} H_{rig}^0(U, R^n \pi_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger)) \longrightarrow H_{rig}^0(U, R^{j+n} \pi_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger)),$$

which, via the identification  $H_{rig}^0(U, R^i \pi_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger)) \cong \mathcal{H}^i(X/\mathbb{K})$ , furnishes a  $\mathbb{K}$ -bilinear pairing:

$$\cup : \mathcal{H}^j(X/\mathbb{K}) \otimes_{\mathbb{K}} \mathcal{H}^n(X/\mathbb{K}) \longrightarrow \mathcal{H}^{j+n}(X/\mathbb{K}).$$

**Lemma 6.14.** *The pairing  $\cup$  is independent of the choice of  $\pi : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow U$  and the isomorphism  $\mathfrak{X}_L \cong X$ .*

We will call  $\cup$  the cup product on  $\mathcal{H}^*(X/\mathbb{K}) = \bigoplus_{n=0}^{\infty} \mathcal{H}^n(X/\mathbb{K})$ , which makes  $\mathcal{H}^*(X/\mathbb{K})$  into a graded ring.

*Proof.* Let  $\mathcal{I}$  be the same category as in the proof of Proposition 6.11. Then the lemma follows from the following remark: for every morphism  $\iota$  of  $\mathcal{I}$  from  $(U, \mathfrak{X}, \pi, \phi)$  to  $(U', \mathfrak{X}', \pi', \phi')$  the diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} H_{rig}^0(U, R^j \pi_* (\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger)) \otimes_{\mathbb{K}} H_{rig}^0(U, R^n \pi_* (\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger)) & \longrightarrow & H_{rig}^0(U, R^{j+n} \pi_* (\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger)) \\ \downarrow \mathcal{H}^j(\iota) \otimes \mathcal{H}^n(\iota) & & \downarrow \mathcal{H}^{j+n}(\iota) \\ H_{rig}^0(U', R^j \pi'_* (\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}'}^\dagger)) \otimes_{\mathbb{K}} H_{rig}^0(U', R^n \pi'_* (\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}'}^\dagger)) & \longrightarrow & H_{rig}^0(U', R^{j+n} \pi'_* (\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}'}^\dagger)) \end{array}$$

is commutative, where the horizontal maps are the bilinear maps introduced in Definition 6.13.  $\square$

**Definition 6.15.** Assume now that  $X$  is also equidimensional of dimension  $d$  and let  $z \in Z_r(X)$  be a cycle. Let  $\pi : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow U$  be a projective, smooth morphism of  $k$ -schemes where  $U$  is a non-empty Zariski-open sub-curve of  $\mathcal{C}$  and the generic fibre of  $\pi$  is isomorphic to  $X$ . By shrinking  $U$ , if it is necessary, we may assure that there is a cycle  $\mathfrak{z} \in Z_{r+1}(\mathfrak{X})$  whose base change to  $X$  is  $z$ . Let  $\gamma_X(z) \in \mathcal{H}^{2d-2r}(X/\mathbb{K})$  denote the image of  $\gamma_{\mathfrak{X}}(\mathfrak{z}) \in H_{rig}^{2d-2r}(\mathfrak{X}, \mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger)$  under the map:

$$H_{rig}^{2d-2r}(\mathfrak{X}, \mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger) \longrightarrow H_{rig}^0(U, R^{2d-2r} \pi_* (\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger))$$

furnished by the Leray spectral sequence  $H_{rig}^i(U, R^j \pi_* (\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger)) \Rightarrow H_{rig}^{i+j}(\mathfrak{X}, \mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger)$ .

**Lemma 6.16.** *The cycle class  $\gamma_X(z) \in \mathcal{H}^{2d-2r}(X/\mathbb{K})$  is well-defined, that is, it is independent of the choices made.*

*Proof.* We are going to define a category  $\mathcal{I}(z)$  as follows. Its objects  $\text{Ob}(\mathcal{I}(z))$  are quintuples  $(U, \mathfrak{X}, \pi, \phi, \mathfrak{z})$ , where  $(U, \mathfrak{X}, \pi, \phi)$  is an object of the category  $\mathcal{I}$  introduced in the proof of Proposition 6.11, and  $\mathfrak{z} \in Z_{r+1}(\mathfrak{X})$  is a cycle whose base change to  $X$  is  $z$  with respect to the isomorphism  $\phi : \mathfrak{X}_L \rightarrow X$ . A morphism of  $\mathcal{I}(z)$  between two objects  $(U, \mathfrak{X}, \pi, \phi, \mathfrak{z})$  and  $(U', \mathfrak{X}', \pi', \phi', \mathfrak{z}')$  is a morphism

$$\iota : i^*(\mathfrak{X}) \longrightarrow \mathfrak{X}'$$

from  $(U, \mathfrak{X}, \pi, \phi)$  to  $(U', \mathfrak{X}', \pi', \phi')$  in  $\mathcal{I}$ , where  $i : U' \rightarrow U$  is the inclusion map, which maps the pull-back cycle  $i^*(\mathfrak{z})$  to  $\mathfrak{z}'$ .

Let  $(U, \mathfrak{X}, \pi, \phi, \mathfrak{z})$  and  $(U', \mathfrak{X}', \pi', \phi', \mathfrak{z}')$  be two objects of  $\mathcal{I}(z)$ . Then there is a non-empty open sub-curve  $V \subset U \cap U'$  such that there is an isomorphism  $\iota : \mathfrak{X}_V \rightarrow \mathfrak{X}'_V$ , where  $\mathfrak{X}_V$  and  $\mathfrak{X}'_V$  are the pull-back of  $\mathfrak{X}$  and  $\mathfrak{X}'$  with respect to the inclusions  $V \subset U$  and  $V \subset U'$ , respectively, such that the pull-back of  $\mathfrak{z}$  onto  $\mathfrak{X}_V$  maps to the pull-back of  $\mathfrak{z}'$  onto  $\mathfrak{X}'_V$  with respect to  $\iota$ , or in other words the category  $\mathcal{I}(z)$  is filtering.

For every object  $(U, \mathfrak{X}, \pi, \phi, \mathfrak{z})$  of  $\mathcal{I}(z)$  let  $\gamma(U, \mathfrak{X}, \pi, \phi, \mathfrak{z}) \in H_{rig}^0(U, R^{2d-2r} \pi_* (\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger))$  denote the image of  $\gamma_{\mathfrak{X}}(\mathfrak{z}) \in H_{rig}^{2d-2r}(\mathfrak{X}, \mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger)$  under the map:

$$H_{rig}^{2d-2r}(\mathfrak{X}, \mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger) \longrightarrow H_{rig}^0(U, R^{2d-2r} \pi_* (\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger))$$

furnished by the Leray spectral sequence  $H_{rig}^i(U, R^j \pi_* (\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger)) \Rightarrow H_{rig}^{i+j}(\mathfrak{X}, \mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger)$ . For every morphism  $\iota$  of  $\mathcal{I}(z)$  from  $(U, \mathfrak{X}, \pi, \phi, \mathfrak{z})$  to  $(U', \mathfrak{X}', \pi', \phi', \mathfrak{z}')$  the homomorphism

$$\mathcal{H}^{2d-2r}(\iota) : H_{rig}^0(U, R^{2d-2r} \pi_* (\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger)) \longrightarrow H_{rig}^0(U', R^{2d-2r} \pi'_* (\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}'}^\dagger))$$

introduced in the proof of Proposition 6.11 maps the section  $\gamma(U, \mathfrak{X}, \pi, \phi, \mathfrak{z})$  to the section  $\gamma(U', \mathfrak{X}', \pi', \phi', \mathfrak{z}')$ , therefore the limit:

$$\lim_{(V, \mathfrak{Y}, \rho, \lambda, \mathfrak{o}) \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{I}(z))} \gamma(V, \mathfrak{Y}, \rho, \lambda, \mathfrak{o}) \in \lim_{(V, \mathfrak{Y}, \rho, \lambda, \mathfrak{o}) \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{I}(z))} H_{rig}^0(V, R^{2d-2r} \rho_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{Y}}^\dagger)) = \mathcal{H}^{2d-2r}(X/\mathbb{K})$$

is well-defined. As we already saw in the proof of Proposition 6.11 the natural map:

$$H_{rig}^0(U, R^{2d-2r} \pi_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger)) \longrightarrow \lim_{(V, \mathfrak{Y}, \rho, \lambda, \mathfrak{o}) \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{I}(z))} H_{rig}^0(V, R^{2d-2r} \rho_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{Y}}^\dagger))$$

for every  $(U, \mathfrak{X}, \pi, \phi, \mathfrak{z}) \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{I}(z))$  is an isomorphism. The claim is now clear.  $\square$

**Proposition 6.17.** *Let  $X$  be as above, and let  $z \in Z_r(X)$  be a cycle rationally equivalent to zero. Then  $\gamma_X(z) = 0$ . Therefore the cycle class map  $\gamma_X$  factors through the quotient map  $Z_r(X) \rightarrow CH_r(X)$ , and hence furnishes a homomorphism:*

$$\gamma_X : CH^r(X) \longrightarrow \mathcal{H}^{2r}(X/\mathbb{K}),$$

which we will denote by the same symbol by slight abuse of notation.

*Proof.* Without the loss of generality we may assume that there is an irreducible subvariety  $Y \subset X$  of dimension  $r+1$  and a rational function  $\phi$  on  $Y$  such that  $z$  is the divisor of  $\phi$ . Let  $\pi : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow U$  be a projective, smooth morphism of  $k$ -schemes where  $U$  is a non-empty Zariski-open sub-curve of  $\mathcal{C}$  and the generic fibre of  $\pi$  is  $X$ . Let  $\mathfrak{Y} \subset \mathfrak{X}$  be the Zariski-closure of  $Y$  in  $\mathfrak{X}$ . Then  $\mathfrak{Y}$  is an irreducible subvariety of  $X$  of dimension  $r+2$  and the divisor of  $\phi$ , considered as a rational function on  $\mathfrak{Y}$ , is a cycle  $w \in Z_{r+1}(\mathfrak{X})$  whose base change to  $X$  is  $z$ . Therefore  $\gamma_{\mathfrak{X}}(w)$  is also zero by Proposition 6.5, and the claim is now clear.  $\square$

**Theorem 6.18.** *Let  $X$  be as above. Then*

(a) *for every  $x \in CH^r(X)$  and  $y \in CH^s(X)$  we have:*

$$\gamma_X(x \cap y) = \gamma_X(x) \cup \gamma_X(y) \in \mathcal{H}^{2r+2s}(X/\mathbb{K}).$$

*In other words the map*

$$\gamma_X : CH^*(X) \longrightarrow \mathcal{H}^*(X/\mathbb{K})$$

*is a ring homomorphism.*

(b) *for every morphism  $f : Y \rightarrow X$  between smooth equidimensional varieties over  $L$ , and for every  $z \in CH^*(X)$  we have:*

$$f^*(\gamma_X(z)) = \gamma_Y(f^*(z)).$$

*Proof.* We first prove (a). Let  $\pi : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow U$  be a projective, smooth morphism of  $k$ -schemes where  $U$  is a non-empty Zariski-open sub-curve of  $\mathcal{C}$  and the generic fibre of  $\pi$  is isomorphic to  $X$ , as above. By shrinking  $U$  if it is necessary we may assume that there are two cycles  $\mathfrak{r}, \mathfrak{y}$  on  $\mathfrak{X}$  whose pull-backs to  $X$  represent  $x$  and  $y$ , respectively. Using moving lemma (see 2.3 of [21] on page 156) we immediately reduce to the case when  $\mathfrak{r}$  and  $\mathfrak{y}$  intersect properly. Then  $\mathfrak{r} \cap \mathfrak{y}$  represents the cycle class  $x \cap y$  in  $X$  and the claim follows from part (a) of Theorem 6.7.

Let  $f : Y \rightarrow X$  be as in part (b) above. Then there is a non-empty Zariski-open sub-curve  $U$  of  $\mathcal{C}$ , two smooth, projective morphisms  $\pi : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow U$ ,  $\rho : \mathfrak{Y} \rightarrow U$  of  $k$ -schemes, and a morphism  $f : \mathfrak{Y} \rightarrow \mathfrak{X}$  of  $U$ -schemes such that the base change of  $f$  to  $\text{Spec}(L)$  is isomorphic to  $f$ . By shrinking  $U$ , if it is necessary, we may assure



that there is a cycle  $\mathfrak{z} \in Z_{r+1}(\mathfrak{X})$  whose base change to  $X$  is  $z$ . Note that there is a commutative diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} H_{rig}^{2d-2r}(\mathfrak{X}, \mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^{\dagger}) & \xrightarrow{f^*} & H_{rig}^{2d-2r}(\mathfrak{Y}, \mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{Y}}^{\dagger}) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ H_{rig}^0(U, R^{2d-2r}\pi_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^{\dagger})) & \longrightarrow & H_{rig}^0(U, R^{2d-2r}\rho_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{Y}}^{\dagger})), \end{array}$$

where the vertical maps are furnished by the Leray spectral sequences

$$H_{rig}^i(U, R^j\pi_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^{\dagger})) \Rightarrow H_{rig}^{i+j}(\mathfrak{X}, \mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^{\dagger}) \text{ and } H_{rig}^i(U, R^j\rho_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{Y}}^{\dagger})) \Rightarrow H_{rig}^{i+j}(\mathfrak{Y}, \mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{Y}}^{\dagger}),$$

respectively, the upper horizontal map is the pull-back with respect to  $f$ , and the lower horizontal map corresponds to the homomorphism:

$$\mathcal{H}^{2d-2r}(f) : \mathcal{H}^k(X/\mathbb{K}) \longrightarrow \mathcal{H}^{2d-2r}(Y/\mathbb{K})$$

under the the isomorphism (6.11.2). Since  $f^*(\mathfrak{z})$  is a cycle in  $Z_{r+1}(\mathfrak{Y})$  whose base change to  $Y$  is  $f^*(z)$ , now claim (b) follows from part (b) of Theorem 6.7.  $\square$

**Notation 6.19.** Let  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n$  be smooth, projective varieties over  $L$  and let

$$\pi_i : X_1 \times X_2 \times \dots \times X_n \longrightarrow X_i$$

be the projection onto the  $i$ -th factor. Moreover let  $\pi_{i_1, i_2, \dots, i_n}^*$  denote the map:

$$\mathcal{H}^{i_1}(X_1/\mathbb{K}) \otimes_{\mathbb{K}} \mathcal{H}^{i_2}(X_2/\mathbb{K}) \otimes_{\mathbb{K}} \dots \otimes_{\mathbb{K}} \mathcal{H}^{i_n}(X_n/\mathbb{K}) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}^{i_1+i_2+\dots+i_n}(X_1 \times \dots \times X_n/\mathbb{K})$$

given by the rule:

$$x_1 \otimes_{\mathbb{K}} x_2 \otimes_{\mathbb{K}} \dots \otimes_{\mathbb{K}} x_n \mapsto \pi_1^*(x_1) \cup \pi_2^*(x_2) \cup \dots \cup \pi_n^*(x_n).$$

**Lemma 6.20.** *The direct sum:*

$$\bigoplus_{i_1+\dots+i_n=r} \pi_{i_1, i_2, \dots, i_n}^* : \bigoplus_{i_1+i_2+\dots+i_n=r} \mathcal{H}^{i_1}(X_1/\mathbb{K}) \otimes_{\mathbb{K}} \dots \otimes_{\mathbb{K}} \mathcal{H}^{i_n}(X_n/\mathbb{K}) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}^r(X_1 \times \dots \times X_n/\mathbb{K})$$

is an isomorphism.

*Proof.* There is a non-empty Zariski-open sub-curve  $U$  of  $\mathcal{C}$  and for every  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$  a smooth, projective morphism  $\rho_i : \mathfrak{X}_i \rightarrow U$  such that the base change of  $\mathfrak{X}_i$  to  $\text{Spec}(L)$  is isomorphic to  $X_i$  for every index  $i$ . Let

$$\rho : \mathfrak{X}_1 \times_U \dots \times_U \mathfrak{X}_n \longrightarrow U$$

be the fibre product of the morphisms  $\rho_1, \rho_2, \dots, \rho_n$  over  $U$ . Let  $\rho_{i_1, i_2, \dots, i_n}^*$  denote the map

$$R^{i_1}\rho_{1*}(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}_1}^{\dagger}) \otimes R^{i_2}\rho_{2*}(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}_2}^{\dagger}) \otimes \dots \otimes R^{i_n}\rho_{n*}(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}_n}^{\dagger}) \longrightarrow R^{i_1+i_2+\dots+i_n}\rho_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}_1 \times_U \dots \times_U \mathfrak{X}_n}^{\dagger})$$

of overconvergent  $F$ -isocrystals induced by the fibre-wise exterior cup product. Note that the direct sum:

$$\bigoplus_{i_1+\dots+i_n=r} \rho_{i_1, i_2, \dots, i_n}^* : \bigoplus_{i_1+i_2+\dots+i_n=r} R^{i_1}\rho_{1*}(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}_1}^{\dagger}) \otimes \dots \otimes R^{i_n}\rho_{n*}(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}_n}^{\dagger}) \rightarrow R^r\rho_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}_1 \times_U \dots \times_U \mathfrak{X}_n}^{\dagger})$$

is an isomorphism. The latter follows at once from the proper base change theorem and the Künneth formula applied to the fibre of the  $U$ -scheme  $\mathfrak{X}_1 \times_U \dots \times_U \mathfrak{X}_n$  at a closed point  $x$  of  $U$ . By taking global sections we get the lemma.  $\square$

**Proposition 6.21.** *Let  $X$  be as above. Then  $\gamma_X : CH^r(X) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}^{2r}(X/\mathbb{K})$  factors through  $s_X : CH^r(X) \rightarrow CH_{SN}^r(X)$ , and hence furnishes a homomorphism:*

$$\sigma_X : CH_{SN}^r(X) \longrightarrow \mathcal{H}^{2r}(X/\mathbb{K}).$$

*Proof.* The proof is very similar to the argument presented for Proposition 6.8. Let  $z$  be a cycle of codimension  $r$  on  $X$  smash-nilpotent to zero. By definition there is a positive integer  $n$  such that the  $n$ -fold smash product  $z^{\otimes n}$  on the  $n$ -fold direct product  $X^n = X \times X \times \cdots \times X$  is rationally equivalent to zero. By Theorem 6.18 we have:

$$\gamma_{X^n}(z^{\otimes n}) = \pi_1^*(\gamma_X(z)) \cup \pi_2^*(\gamma_X(z)) \cup \cdots \cup \pi_n^*(\gamma_X(z)),$$

where  $\pi_i : X^n \rightarrow X$  is the projection onto the  $i$ -th factor. Since  $z^{\otimes n}$  is rationally equivalent to zero, the left hand side is zero by Proposition 6.17. By Lemma 6.20 above the map:

$$\mathcal{H}^{2r}(X/\mathbb{K}) \otimes_{\mathbb{K}} \cdots \otimes_{\mathbb{K}} \mathcal{H}^{2r}(X/\mathbb{K}) \longrightarrow \mathcal{H}^{2rn}(X^n/\mathbb{K})$$

given by the rule:

$$x_1 \otimes_{\mathbb{K}} x_2 \otimes_{\mathbb{K}} \cdots \otimes_{\mathbb{K}} x_n \mapsto \pi_1^*(x_1) \cup \pi_2^*(x_2) \cup \cdots \cup \pi_n^*(x_n)$$

is injective. The claim now follows.  $\square$

By the above  $\gamma_X : CH^r(X) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}^{2r}(X/\mathbb{K})$  also factors through the quotient map  $\alpha_X : CH^r(X) \rightarrow CH_A^r(X)$ , and hence furnishes a homomorphism:

$$\alpha_X^r : CH_A^r(X) \longrightarrow \mathcal{H}^{2r}(X/\mathbb{K}).$$

**Proposition 6.22.** *Let  $X$  be as above. Then there is a homomorphism:*

$$\mathrm{Tr}_X : \mathcal{H}^{2d}(X/\mathbb{K}) \longrightarrow \mathbb{K}$$

*such that diagram:*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} CH_A^0(X) & \xrightarrow{\alpha_X^0} & \mathcal{H}^{2d}(X/\mathbb{K}) \\ \downarrow \mathrm{deg} & & \downarrow \mathrm{Tr}_X \\ \mathbb{Z} & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \mathbb{K} \end{array}$$

*commutes.*

*Proof.* Because the group  $CH_A^0(X)$  is finitely generated, there is a  $\pi : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow U$  as above such that for every  $z \in CH_A^0(X)$  there is a cycle  $\mathfrak{z}$  on  $\mathfrak{X}$  whose pull-back to  $X$  represents  $z$ . We may even assume that for every  $x \in |U|$  the fibre of  $\pi$  over  $x$  intersects  $\mathfrak{z}$  properly, by removing irreducible components which  $\pi$  does not map onto  $U$ . Fix a closed point  $x \in |U|$  whose residue field  $k'$  is a finite extension of  $k$ . Let  $\mathbb{K}'$  be the unique unramified extension of  $\mathbb{K}$  with residue field  $k'$ . Let  $R^{2d}\pi_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger)_x$  be the fibre of  $R^{2d}\pi_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger)$  at  $x$ ; forgetting the Frobenius structure we get a finite dimensional  $\mathbb{K}'$ -linear vector space. Let  $\mathfrak{X}_x$  be the fibre of  $\pi$  over  $x$ , and let

$$b : R^{2d}\pi_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger)_x \longrightarrow H_{rig}^{2d}(\mathfrak{X}_x/\mathbb{K}')$$

be the map furnished by the proper base change theorem. We define

$$\mathrm{Tr}_X : \mathcal{H}^{2d}(X/\mathbb{K}) \longrightarrow \mathbb{K}$$

as the composition of the restriction map

$$\mathcal{H}^{2d}(X/\mathbb{K}) \cong H_{rig}^0(U, R^{2d}\pi_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger)) \longrightarrow R^{2d}\pi_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger)_x,$$

the homomorphism  $b$ , the trace homomorphism

$$\mathrm{Tr}_{\mathfrak{X}_x} : H_{rig}^{2d}(\mathfrak{X}_x/\mathbb{K}') \longrightarrow \mathbb{K}'$$

in Proposition 6.9, and  $\deg(\mathbb{K}'/\mathbb{K})^{-1} \cdot \mathrm{Tr}_{\mathbb{K}'/\mathbb{K}}$ , where  $\mathrm{Tr}_{\mathbb{K}'/\mathbb{K}}$ ,  $\deg(\mathbb{K}'/\mathbb{K})$  is the trace map and the degree of the field extension  $\mathbb{K}'/\mathbb{K}$ , respectively. Note that for every cycle  $\mathfrak{z}$  on  $\mathfrak{X}$  of codimension  $d$  the pull-backs of  $\mathfrak{z}$  to  $X$  and  $\mathfrak{X}_v$  have the same degree. So by Proposition 6.9 the map  $\mathrm{Tr}_X$  has the required properties.  $\square$

For any  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  and for any abelian scheme  $A$  over a scheme  $S$  let  $[n] : A \rightarrow A$  be the multiplication by  $n$  map on  $A$ .

**Lemma 6.23.** *Let  $A$  be an abelian variety over  $L$ . Then  $\mathcal{H}^k([n]) : \mathcal{H}^k(A/\mathbb{K}) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}^k(A/\mathbb{K})$  is the multiplication by  $n^k$  map.*

*Proof.* Let  $U$  be a non-empty Zariski-open set of  $\mathcal{C}$  and let  $\pi : \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow U$  be an abelian scheme whose generic fibre is  $A$ . Using the proper base change theorem, we only need to check a similar claim on the fibres of  $\pi$ , that is, we only need to prove the similar claim for abelian varieties over (finite extensions of)  $k$ . So let  $B$  be an abelian variety over  $k$ ; we want to show that the map  $H_{rig}^k([n]) : H_{rig}^k(B/\mathbb{K}) \rightarrow H_{rig}^k(B/\mathbb{K})$  induced by  $[n]$  is the multiplication by  $n^k$  map. Let  $\mathbf{B}$  be an abelian scheme over  $\mathrm{Spec}(\mathcal{O})$  which is a lift of  $B$  to  $\mathrm{Spec}(\mathcal{O})$ . Let  $\mathcal{B}$  denote the base change of  $\mathbf{B}$  to  $\mathrm{Spec}(\mathbb{K})$ . It is well-known that the map  $H_{dR}^k([n]) : H_{dR}^k(\mathcal{B}/\mathbb{K}) \rightarrow H_{dR}^k(\mathcal{B}/\mathbb{K})$  induced by  $[n]$  on the  $k$ -th de Rham cohomology of  $\mathcal{B}$  over  $\mathbb{K}$  is the multiplication by  $n^k$  map. Since the base change of  $[n] : \mathbf{B} \rightarrow \mathbf{B}$  to  $\mathrm{Spec}(k)$  and  $\mathrm{Spec}(\mathbb{K})$  are the multiplication by  $n$  maps on  $B$  and  $\mathcal{B}$ , respectively, under the isomorphism  $H_{rig}^k(B/\mathbb{K}) \cong H_{dR}^k(\mathcal{B}/\mathbb{K})$  (furnished by the lift  $\mathbf{B}$ ) the maps  $H_{rig}^k([n])$  and  $H_{dR}^k([n])$  correspond to each other. The claim follows.  $\square$

## 7. THE $p$ -ADIC TATE CONJECTURE OVER FUNCTION FIELDS

**Definition 7.1.** We continue to use the notation of the previous section. Let  $X$  be again a smooth, projective variety over the function field  $L$  and let  $\pi : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow U$  be a projective, smooth morphism of  $k$ -schemes where  $U$  is a non-empty Zariski-open sub-curve of  $\mathcal{C}$  and the generic fibre of  $\pi$  is isomorphic to  $X$ . The Frobenius of the  $F$ -isocrystal  $R^r \pi_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger)$  furnishes a map:

$$F : H_{rig}^0(U, R^r \pi_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger)) \longrightarrow H_{rig}^0(U, R^r \pi_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger))$$

on global sections which, via the identification in (6.11.2), makes  $\mathcal{H}^r(X/\mathbb{K})$  into an  $F$ -isocrystal over  $k$ . Since the comparison maps appearing in the proof of Proposition 6.11 are induced by maps between  $F$ -isocrystals, this additional structure is independent of the choice of  $\pi : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow U$  and the isomorphism  $\mathfrak{X}_L \cong X$ .

**Proposition 7.2.** *Assume now that  $X$  is also equidimensional of dimension  $d$  and let  $z \in Z_r(X)$  be a cycle. Then  $F(\gamma_X(z)) = p^r \gamma_X(z)$ .*

*Proof.* Note that the map:

$$H^{2d-2r}(\mathfrak{X}, \mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger) \longrightarrow H_{rig}^0(U, R^{2d-2r} \pi_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger))$$

furnished by the Leray spectral sequence  $H_{rig}^i(U, R^j \pi_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger)) \Rightarrow H_{rig}^{i+j}(\mathfrak{X}, \mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger)$  respects the Frobenii. Therefore the claim follows at once from Proposition 5.34 of [39] on page 104.  $\square$

**Definition 7.3.** Assume now that  $k$  is a finite field  $\mathbb{F}_q$  and  $q = p^f$ . Let  $X$  be as above and let  $l$  be any prime number different from  $p$ . Recall that the  $l$ -adic Tate conjecture  $T(X, r, l)$  for  $r$  codimensional algebraic cycles of  $X$  claims that the map

$$CH_A^r(X) \otimes \mathbb{Q}_l \longrightarrow H^{2r}(X, \mathbb{Q}_l(r))^{\text{Gal}(\bar{\mathbb{T}}/L)}$$

furnished by the  $l$ -adic cycle class map is surjective. The  $p$ -adic analogue  $T(X, r, p)$  of this conjecture says that the  $\mathbb{K}$ -linearisation of the map  $\alpha_X^r$ :

$$\bar{\alpha}_X^r : CH_A^r(X) \otimes \mathbb{K} \longrightarrow \mathcal{H}^{2r}(X/\mathbb{K})^{F^f = q^r \cdot \text{id}}$$

is surjective. (Note that  $F^f$  is  $\mathbb{K}$ -linear and hence the range of the map above is a  $\mathbb{K}$ -linear subspace of  $\mathcal{H}^r(X/\mathbb{K})$ .)

**Proposition 7.4.** *Assume that  $X$  is geometrically irreducible. The following claims are equivalent:*

- (a) *the claim  $T(X, 1, l)$  is true for some prime number  $l$ ,*
- (b) *the claim  $T(X, 1, l)$  is true for every prime number  $l$ .*

We will prove the proposition above through a sequence of other claims. But before doing so, it will be convenient to make some basic definitions.

**Definition 7.5.** Let  $F : U \rightarrow U$  be again the  $q$ -power Frobenius, and let  $\mathbb{L}$  be a totally ramified finite extension of  $\mathbb{Q}_q$ . Let  $\sigma$  be the identity of  $\mathbb{L}$  and let  $\mathcal{F}$  be an object of  $F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(U/\mathbb{L})$ . By definition the  $L$ -function of  $\mathcal{F}$  on  $U$  is the product:

$$L(U, \mathcal{F}, t) = \prod_{x \in |U|} \det(1 - t^{\deg(x)} \cdot \text{Frob}_x(\mathcal{F}))^{-1}.$$

Similarly for every prime number  $l \neq p$ , a finite extension  $\mathbb{E}$  of  $\mathbb{Q}_l$ , and for every lisse  $\mathbb{E}$ -sheaf  $\mathcal{L}$  on  $U$  let  $\text{Frob}_x(\mathcal{L})$  denote the geometric Frobenius of the fibre  $\mathcal{L}_x$  of  $\mathcal{L}$  over  $x$ . By definition the  $L$ -function of  $\mathcal{L}$  on  $U$  is the product:

$$L(U, \mathcal{L}, t) = \prod_{x \in |U|} \det(1 - t^{\deg(x)} \cdot \text{Frob}_x(\mathcal{L}))^{-1}.$$

*Proof of Proposition 7.4.* Let  $\pi : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow U$  be a projective, smooth morphism of  $k$ -schemes where  $U$  is a non-empty Zariski-open sub-curve of  $\mathcal{C}$  and the generic fibre of  $\pi$  is isomorphic to  $X$ , as usual. For every prime number  $l \neq p$  and for every natural number  $n$  let  $H^n(\mathfrak{X})_l$  denote the  $n$ -th higher direct image  $R^n \pi_*(\mathbb{Q}_l)$  of the constant  $l$ -adic sheaf  $\mathbb{Q}_l$ . It is a lisse  $\mathbb{Q}_l$ -sheaf on  $U$ . Similarly let  $H^n(\mathfrak{X})_p$  denote the overconvergent  $F$ -isocrystal  $R^n \pi_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger)$ .

**Lemma 7.6.** *We have  $L(U, H^n(\mathfrak{X})_l, t) \in \mathbb{Q}[[t]]$  for every  $l$ , and these functions are all equal.*

*Proof.* It will be sufficient to prove that for every  $x \in |U|$  the local factors

$$\det(1 - t^{\deg(x)} \cdot \text{Frob}_x(H^n(\mathfrak{X})_l))^{-1}$$

have coefficients in  $\mathbb{Q}$ , and are equal. However these claims follows at once from the respective proper base change theorems and the main result of [24] applied to the fibre of  $\pi$  over  $x$ .  $\square$

Set  $n = 2d - 2$  and let  $\rho$  be the common order of pole of these  $L$ -functions at  $t = q^{-d}$ . Proposition 7.4 above follows immediately from the claim below.  $\square$

**Proposition 7.7.** *For every prime  $l$  the following claims are equivalent:*

- (a) the claim  $T(X, 1, l)$  is true,
- (b) the rank of  $NS(X)$  is  $\rho$ .

*Proof.* We are only going to prove the claim for  $l = p$ . The proof for other primes is similar, and rather well-known (see [43], for example). Let

$$\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle : CH_A^1(X) \otimes \mathbb{K} \times CH_A^{d-1} \otimes \mathbb{K} \longrightarrow CH_A^0(X) \otimes \mathbb{K} \longrightarrow \mathbb{K}$$

be the composition of the  $\mathbb{K}$ -linearisations of the intersection pairing and the degree map. By Theorem 6.18 and Proposition 6.22 the diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} CH_A^1(X) \otimes \mathbb{K} \times CH_A^{d-1} \otimes \mathbb{K} & \xrightarrow{\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle} & \mathbb{K} \\ \downarrow \bar{\alpha}_X^1 \times \bar{\alpha}_X^{d-1} & & \uparrow \text{Tr}_X \\ \mathcal{H}^2(X/\mathbb{K}) \times \mathcal{H}^{2d-2}(X/\mathbb{K}) & \xrightarrow{\cup} & \mathcal{H}^{2d}(X/\mathbb{K}) \end{array}$$

is commutative. By Matsusaka's theorem (see [38]) algebraic equivalence and numerical equivalence coincide on  $CH^1(X)$  up to torsion. Therefore we get that

$$(7.7.1) \quad \bar{\alpha}_X^1 : CH_A^1(X) \otimes \mathbb{K} \longrightarrow \mathcal{H}^2(X/\mathbb{K})^{F^f = q \cdot \text{id}}$$

is injective.

Let  $W \subset \mathcal{H}^2(X/\mathbb{K})$  be the generalised eigenspace of  $F^f$  with eigenvalue  $q$ , that is, the union  $\bigcup_{n=1}^{\infty} \text{Ker}(F^f - q \cdot \text{id})^n$ . Clearly  $\mathcal{H}^2(X/\mathbb{K})^{F^f = q \cdot \text{id}} \subseteq W$ , so by Lemma 7.8 below the range of the map in (7.7.1) has dimension at most  $\rho$ . Therefore (b) implies (a). Assume now that (a) holds and let  $V \subset W$  be the subspace annihilated by  $\text{Im}(\bar{\alpha}_X^{d-1})$  with respect to the cup product. Then  $V$  is an  $F^f$ -invariant subspace, since  $\text{Im}(\bar{\alpha}_X^{d-1})$  is  $F^f$ -invariant. By Matsusaka's theorem the intersection of  $V$  and  $\text{Im}(\bar{\alpha}_X^1)$  is the zero vector. If (b) were false then  $V$  would have positive dimension, so it would contain an eigenvector for  $F^f$  with eigenvalue  $q$ . This is a contradiction.  $\square$

**Lemma 7.8.** *The  $\mathbb{K}$ -dimension of  $W$  is  $\rho$ .*

*Proof.* By the Etesse-Le Stum trace formula (see Theorem 6.3 of [17] on pages 570–571):

$$L(U, R^{2d-2}\pi_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger), t) = \prod_{i=0}^2 \det(1 - t \cdot F^f | H_{rig,c}^i(U, R^{2d-2}\pi_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger)))^{(-1)^{i+1}}.$$

Since  $R^{2d-2}\pi_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger)$  is pure of weight  $2d - 2$ , for  $i = 0, 1$  the cohomology group  $H_{rig,c}^i(U, R^{2d-2}\pi_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger))$  is mixed of weight  $\leq 2d - 2 + i$  by Theorem 5.3.2 of [29] on page 1445; in particular it has weights  $< 2d$ . Therefore the first two factors of the product above do not contribute to the order of the pole at  $t = q^{-d}$ . Let  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_m$  be the reciprocal roots of the characteristic polynomial of  $F^f$  acting on  $H_{rig,c}^2(U, R^{2d-2}\pi_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger))$ , where  $m$  is the dimension of  $H_{rig,c}^2(U, R^{2d-2}\pi_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger))$ . Since there is a perfect pairing:

$$R^2\pi_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger) \otimes R^{2d-2}\pi_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger) \longrightarrow R^{2d}\pi_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger) \cong \mathcal{O}_U^\dagger(d),$$

by Poincaré duality (see Theorem 9.5 of [11] on pages 753–754) the reciprocal roots of the characteristic polynomial of  $F^f$  acting on  $H_{rig}^0(U, R^2\pi_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger))$  are

$\frac{q^{d+1}}{\alpha_1}, \frac{q^{d+1}}{\alpha_2}, \dots, \frac{q^{d+1}}{\alpha_m}$ . Since  $\mathcal{H}^2(X/\mathbb{K}) = H_{rig}^0(U, R^2\pi_*(\mathcal{O}_X^\dagger))$  the order of vanishing of the polynomial  $\det(1 - t \cdot F^f | H_{rig,c}^2(U, R^{2d-2}\pi_*(\mathcal{O}_X^\dagger)))$  at  $t = q^{-d}$  is the dimension of  $W$ .  $\square$

Recall that  $U$  is a non-empty Zariski-open sub-curve of  $\mathcal{C}$ . Let  $\mathfrak{A}$  and  $\mathfrak{B}$  be two abelian schemes over  $U$ , and let  $A, B$  denote their base change to  $L$ , respectively. For every prime  $l$  different from  $p$  the  $l$ -adic isogeny conjecture  $I(\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{B}, l)$  is that the map

$$\mathrm{Hom}(\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{B}) \otimes \mathbb{Q}_l \longrightarrow \mathrm{Hom}(T_l(\mathfrak{A}), T_l(\mathfrak{B}))$$

induced by the functoriality of  $l$ -adic Tate module is an isomorphism. The  $p$ -adic analogue  $I(\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{B}, p)$  is that the map:

$$D_{\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{B}}^\dagger : \mathrm{Hom}(\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{B}) \otimes \mathbb{Q}_p \longrightarrow \mathrm{Hom}(D^\dagger(\mathfrak{A}), D^\dagger(\mathfrak{B}))$$

induced by the functoriality of overconvergent Dieudonné modules is an isomorphism.

*Remark 7.9.* Above  $\mathrm{Hom}(D^\dagger(\mathfrak{A}), D^\dagger(\mathfrak{B}))$  means homomorphisms of overconvergent  $F$ -isocrystals. Let  $\mathrm{Hom}_{F^f}(D^\dagger(\mathfrak{A}), D^\dagger(\mathfrak{B}))$  denote the group of homomorphisms as overconvergent  $F^f$ -isocrystals. Since

$$\mathrm{Hom}(D^\dagger(\mathfrak{A}), D^\dagger(\mathfrak{B})) \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}_p} \mathbb{K} \cong \mathrm{Hom}_{F^f}(D^\dagger(\mathfrak{A}), D^\dagger(\mathfrak{B}))$$

we get that  $I(\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{B}, p)$  is equivalent to the claim that

$$D_{\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{B}}^\dagger \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}_p} \mathbb{K} : \mathrm{Hom}(\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{B}) \otimes \mathbb{K} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Hom}_{F^f}(D^\dagger(\mathfrak{A}), D^\dagger(\mathfrak{B}))$$

is an isomorphism. Moreover note that in order to prove  $I(\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{B}, l)$  it is enough to prove  $I(\mathfrak{A} \times \mathfrak{B}, \mathfrak{A} \times \mathfrak{B}, l)$ .

**Proposition 7.10.** *Let  $\mathfrak{B}$  be an abelian scheme over  $U$ , and let  $B$  denote its base change to  $L$ . For every prime number  $l$  the following holds:*

- (a) *the conjecture  $T(B \times B, 1, l)$  implies the conjecture  $I(\mathfrak{B}, \mathfrak{B}, l)$ ,*
- (b) *the conjecture  $I(\mathfrak{B}, \mathfrak{B}, l)$  implies the conjecture  $T(B, 1, l)$ .*

*Proof.* This claim is well-known when  $l \neq p$  (see for example the proof of Theorem 4 of [42] on page 143.) We will adopt this proof to the case  $l = p$ . Recall that a divisorial correspondence between two pointed varieties  $(S, s)$  and  $(T, t)$  (over  $L$ ) is an invertible sheaf  $\mathcal{L}$  on  $S \times T$  whose restrictions to  $S \times \{t\}$  and  $\{s\} \times T$  are both trivial. These form a subgroup of the Picard group  $S \times T$ . Let  $DC(S, T)$  denote this group by slight abuse notation. (This is justified since usually the base points can be easily guessed.) Let  $ADC(S, T)$  denote the subgroup of divisorial correspondences algebraically equivalent to zero and let  $DC_A(S, T)$  denote the quotient of  $DC(S, T)$  by  $ADC(S, T)$ . Clearly  $DC_A(S, T)$  is a subgroup of  $NS(S \times T)$ .

**Lemma 7.11.** *Assume that  $S, T$  are smooth and projective. Then the image of  $DC_A(S, T)$  under  $\alpha_{S \times T}^1$  lies in  $\mathcal{H}^1(S/\mathbb{K}) \otimes_{\mathbb{K}} \mathcal{H}^1(T/\mathbb{K})$ .*

Here we consider  $\mathcal{H}^1(S/\mathbb{K}) \otimes_{\mathbb{K}} \mathcal{H}^1(T/\mathbb{K})$  as a subgroup of  $\mathcal{H}^2(S \times T/\mathbb{K})$  via the map introduced in Notation 6.19.

*Proof.* Let  $\pi_S : S \times T \rightarrow S$  and  $\pi_T : S \times T \rightarrow T$  be the projection onto the first and onto the second factor, respectively. Let  $i_S : S \rightarrow S \times T$  be the imbedding identifying  $S$  with  $S \times \{t\}$ , and similarly let  $i_T : T \rightarrow S \times T$  be the imbedding

identifying  $S$  with  $\{s\} \times T$ . Note that by part (b) of Theorem 6.18 the image of  $\alpha_{S \times T}^1(DC_A(S, T))$  with respect to the map:

$$\mathcal{H}^2(i_S) \oplus \mathcal{H}^2(i_T) : \mathcal{H}^2(S \times T/\mathbb{K}) \longrightarrow \mathcal{H}^2(S/\mathbb{K}) \oplus \mathcal{H}^2(T/\mathbb{K}),$$

is zero. Therefore it will be enough to show that the kernel of  $\mathcal{H}^2(i_S) \oplus \mathcal{H}^2(i_T)$  is  $\mathcal{H}^1(S/\mathbb{K}) \otimes_{\mathbb{K}} \mathcal{H}^1(T/\mathbb{K})$ . Since  $\pi_S \circ i_S = \text{id}_S$  and  $\pi_T \circ i_T = \text{id}_T$ , we get that the restriction of  $\mathcal{H}^2(i_S) \oplus \mathcal{H}^2(i_T)$  onto the direct summand  $\mathcal{H}^2(S/\mathbb{K}) \oplus \mathcal{H}^2(T/\mathbb{K})$  in the decomposition of  $\mathcal{H}^2(S \times T/\mathbb{K})$  in Lemma 6.20 is an isomorphism, and hence it will be enough to show that the kernel of  $\mathcal{H}^2(i_S) \oplus \mathcal{H}^2(i_T)$  contains  $\mathcal{H}^1(S/\mathbb{K}) \otimes_{\mathbb{K}} \mathcal{H}^1(T/\mathbb{K})$ . The latter is immediate however; because  $\mathcal{H}^*(i_S)$  is a homomorphism of graded rings, the image of  $\mathcal{H}^1(S/\mathbb{K}) \otimes_{\mathbb{K}} \mathcal{H}^1(T/\mathbb{K})$  under  $\mathcal{H}^2(i_S)$  lies in

$$\mathcal{H}^1(S/\mathbb{K}) \otimes_{\mathbb{K}} \mathcal{H}^1(\{t\}/\mathbb{K}) \subset \mathcal{H}^2(S \times_V \{t\}/\mathbb{K}) \cong \mathcal{H}^2(S/\mathbb{K}),$$

but by the proper base change theorem  $\mathcal{H}^1(\{t\}/\mathbb{K}) = 0$ . We may argue similarly for  $\mathcal{H}^2(i_T)$ .  $\square$

Assume now that there are abelian schemes  $\mathfrak{s} : \mathfrak{S} \rightarrow U$  and  $\mathfrak{t} : \mathfrak{T} \rightarrow U$  such that their base change to  $L$  are  $S, T$ , respectively.

**Lemma 7.12.** *The conjecture  $I(\mathfrak{S}, \mathfrak{T}, p)$  holds if and only if the image of the vector space  $DC_A(S, T) \otimes \mathbb{K}$  under  $\bar{\alpha}_{S \times T}^1$  is  $(\mathcal{H}^1(S/\mathbb{K}) \otimes_{\mathbb{K}} \mathcal{H}^1(T/\mathbb{K}))^{F^f = q \cdot \text{id}}$ .*

*Proof.* Note that both

$$\bar{\alpha}_{S \times T}^1 : DC_A(S, T) \otimes \mathbb{K} \longrightarrow (\mathcal{H}^1(S/\mathbb{K}) \otimes_{\mathbb{K}} \mathcal{H}^1(T/\mathbb{K}))^{F^f = q \cdot \text{id}}$$

and

$$D_{\mathfrak{S}, \mathfrak{T}}^\dagger : \text{Hom}(\mathfrak{S}, \mathfrak{T}) \otimes \mathbb{K} \longrightarrow \text{Hom}_{F^f}(D^\dagger(\mathfrak{S}), D^\dagger(\mathfrak{T}))$$

are injective maps. In the first case this follows from Matsusaka's theorem, while in the second case it holds because of the faithfulness of the overconvergent Dieudonné module functor. Therefore it will be enough to show that there are isomorphisms:

$$DC_A(S, T) \otimes \mathbb{K} \cong \text{Hom}(\mathfrak{S}, \mathfrak{T}) \otimes \mathbb{K}, \text{ and} \\ (\mathcal{H}^1(S/\mathbb{K}) \otimes_{\mathbb{K}} \mathcal{H}^1(T/\mathbb{K}))^{F^f = q \cdot \text{id}} \cong \text{Hom}_{F^f}(D^\dagger(\mathfrak{S}), D^\dagger(\mathfrak{T})).$$

Since the first is very well known, we only need to show the second. Recall that  $D^\dagger(\mathfrak{S})$  and  $D^\dagger(\mathfrak{T})$  are overconvergent  $F$ -isocrystals on  $U$ , and hence:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Hom}_{F^f}(D^\dagger(\mathfrak{S}), D^\dagger(\mathfrak{T})) &\cong H_{rig}^0(U, \text{Hom}(D^\dagger(\mathfrak{S}), D^\dagger(\mathfrak{T})))^{F^f = \text{id}} \\ &\cong H_{rig}^0(U, D^\dagger(\mathfrak{S})^\vee \otimes D^\dagger(\mathfrak{T}))^{F^f = \text{id}} \\ &\cong H_{rig}^0(U, D^\dagger(\mathfrak{S})^\vee(1) \otimes D^\dagger(\mathfrak{T}))^{F^f = q \cdot \text{id}}, \end{aligned}$$

where  $\text{Hom}(\cdot, \cdot)$  is the internal Hom in the category of overconvergent  $F$ -isocrystals, for every overconvergent  $F$ -isocrystal  $\mathcal{F}$  on  $U$  we let  $\mathcal{F}^\vee$  denote the dual overconvergent  $F$ -isocrystal  $\text{Hom}(\mathcal{O}_U^\dagger, \mathcal{F})$  and we let  $\mathcal{F}(1)$  denote its Tate-twist. The latter is an overconvergent  $F$ -isocrystal with the same underlying vector bundle and connection as  $\mathcal{F}$ , but with a new Frobenius which is  $q$  times the old Frobenius. On the other hand:

$$\begin{aligned} (\mathcal{H}^1(S/\mathbb{K}) \otimes_{\mathbb{K}} \mathcal{H}^1(T/\mathbb{K}))^{F^f = q \cdot \text{id}} &\cong (H_{rig}^0(U, R^1 \mathfrak{s}_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{S}})) \otimes_{\mathbb{K}} H_{rig}^0(U, R^1 \mathfrak{t}_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{T}})))^{F^f = q \cdot \text{id}} \\ &\cong H_{rig}^0(U, R^1 \mathfrak{s}_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{S}}) \otimes R^1 \mathfrak{t}_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{T}}))^{F^f = q \cdot \text{id}}, \end{aligned}$$

so in order to conclude the proof, we only need to show Lemma 7.13 below.  $\square$



**Lemma 7.13.** *For every abelian scheme  $\pi : \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow U$  the overconvergent  $F$ -isocrystals  $R^1\pi_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{A}})$ ,  $D^\dagger(\mathfrak{A})$ , and  $D^\dagger(\mathfrak{A})^\vee(1)$  are all isomorphic.*

*Proof.* Since  $D^\dagger(\mathfrak{A})^\sim \cong D(\mathfrak{A})$ ,  $D^\dagger(\mathfrak{A})^\vee(1)^\sim \cong D(\mathfrak{A})^\vee(1)$  and  $D(\mathfrak{A}) \cong D(\mathfrak{A})^\vee(1)$ , we get that  $D^\dagger(\mathfrak{A})$  and  $D^\dagger(\mathfrak{A})^\vee(1)$  are isomorphic by Kedlaya's full faithfulness theorem. Similarly in order to show that  $R^1\pi_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{A}})$  and  $D^\dagger(\mathfrak{A})$  are isomorphic, it will be enough to prove that  $R^1\pi_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{A}})^\sim$  and  $D(\mathfrak{A}) \cong D^\dagger(\mathfrak{A})^\sim$  are isomorphic. Let  $\mathfrak{U}$  be a smooth formal lift of  $U$  to  $\mathrm{Spf}(\mathcal{O})$ . Let  $f : \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \mathfrak{U}$  be the morphism of formal  $\mathcal{O}$ -schemes which is the composition of the structure map  $\mathfrak{A} \rightarrow U$  and the closed immersion  $U \rightarrow \mathfrak{U}$ . We will let  $R^*f_{\mathfrak{U}, \mathrm{conv}*}$  denote the higher direct images of convergent  $F$ -isocrystals with respect to  $f$ , similarly to section 2 of [35]. By Théorème 2.5.6 of [3] on page 104 and Proposition 3.3.7 of [3] on page 144 we know that  $D(\mathfrak{A}) \cong R^1f_{\mathfrak{U}, \mathrm{conv}*}(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{A}, \mathbb{Q}})$ . Since  $R^1\pi_*(\mathfrak{A})^\sim$  and  $R^1f_{\mathfrak{U}, \mathrm{conv}*}(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{A}, \mathbb{Q}})$  are isomorphic by Lemmas 5.1 and 5.5 of [35], the claim follows.  $\square$

Now let us start the proof of Proposition 7.10 in earnest! First assume that  $T(B \times B, 1, p)$  is true. Using that  $\bar{\alpha}_B^1$  and  $\bar{\alpha}_{B \times B}^1$  are injective, we get that

$$\begin{aligned} \dim_{\mathbb{K}}(DC_A(B, B) \otimes \mathbb{K}) &= \dim_{\mathbb{K}}(NS(B, B) \otimes \mathbb{K}) - 2 \dim_{\mathbb{K}}(NS(B) \otimes \mathbb{K}) \\ &\geq \dim_{\mathbb{K}}(\mathcal{H}^2(B \times B/\mathbb{K})^{F^f=q\text{-id}}) - 2 \dim_{\mathbb{K}}(\mathcal{H}^2(B/\mathbb{K})^{F^f=q\text{-id}}) \\ &= \dim_{\mathbb{K}}((\mathcal{H}^1(B/\mathbb{K}) \otimes_{\mathbb{K}} \mathcal{H}^1(B/\mathbb{K}))^{F^f=q\text{-id}}), \end{aligned}$$

and so  $I(B, B, p)$  holds by Lemma 7.12. Assume now that  $I(B, B, p)$  is true. Let  $\Delta : B \rightarrow B \times B$  be the diagonal embedding, and let  $m, p_1, p_2 : B \times B \rightarrow B$  denote the addition on  $B$ , and the projections onto the first and second factors, respectively. Consider the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} NS(B) \otimes \mathbb{K} & \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\alpha} \\ \xleftarrow{\beta} \end{array} & DC_A(B, B) \otimes \mathbb{K} \\ \downarrow \bar{\alpha}_B^1 & & \downarrow \bar{\alpha}_{B \times B}^1 \\ \mathcal{H}^2(B/\mathbb{K})^{F^f=q\text{-id}} & \begin{array}{c} \xleftarrow{\alpha'} \\ \xrightarrow{\beta'} \end{array} & (\mathcal{H}^1(B/\mathbb{K}) \otimes_{\mathbb{K}} \mathcal{H}^1(B/\mathbb{K}))^{F^f=q\text{-id}} \end{array}$$

where

$$\alpha = m^* - p_1^* - p_2^*, \quad \alpha' = \mathcal{H}^2(m) - \mathcal{H}^2(p_1) - \mathcal{H}^2(p_2), \quad \beta = \Delta^*, \quad \beta' = \mathcal{H}^2(\Delta),$$

where the subscript  $*$  means the pull-back on Néron–Severi groups. The diagram is commutative in the sense that  $\alpha' \circ \bar{\alpha}_B^1 = \bar{\alpha}_{B \times B}^1 \circ \alpha$  and  $\beta' \circ \bar{\alpha}_{B \times B}^1 = \bar{\alpha}_B^1 \circ \beta$ , and

$$\beta' \circ \alpha' = \mathcal{H}^2(m \circ \Delta) - \mathcal{H}^2(p_1 \circ \Delta) - \mathcal{H}^2(p_2 \circ \Delta) = \mathcal{H}^2([2]) - \mathcal{H}^2([1]) - \mathcal{H}^2([1])$$

is the multiplication by 2 map by Lemma 6.23. By Matsusaka's theorem we get that  $\beta \circ \alpha$  is also the multiplication by 2 map. Therefore the left side of the diagram above is a direct summand of the right side; the claim now follows from Lemma 7.12.  $\square$

*Remark 7.14.* Note that Theorem 1.1 implies de Jong's theorem (Theorem 2.6 of [13] on page 305) by reversing the argument in the first proof of Theorem 1.1 in chapter 4. So we've got a new, although not entirely independent proof of the latter.

## 8. INDEPENDENCE RESULTS

For a moment let  $K$  be a field of characteristic zero and denote by  $ch : \mathrm{GL}_n \rightarrow \mathbb{G}_m \times \mathbb{A}^{n-1}$  the morphism over  $K$  associating to a matrix the coefficients of its characteristic polynomial.

**Proposition 8.1** (Larsen–Pink). *Let  $G \subseteq \mathrm{GL}_n$  be a reductive algebraic subgroup over  $K$ , let  $G^\circ$  be its identity component, and let  $g \in G(K)$ . Then the Zariski-closures of  $ch(gG^\circ)$  and of  $ch(G^\circ)$  are equal if and only if  $g \in G^\circ(K)$ .*

*Proof.* This is Proposition 4.11 of [33] on page 618.  $\square$

For any  $n$ -uple  $\underline{d} = (d_1, d_2, \dots, d_n) \in \mathbb{N}^n$  let

$$\mathrm{GL}_{\underline{d},K} = \prod_{i=1}^n \mathrm{GL}_{d_i,K}$$

denote  $n$ -fold product whose  $i$ -th factor  $\mathrm{GL}_{d_i,K}$  is the general linear group of rank  $d_i$  over  $K$ . As usual let  $\mathbb{G}_{m,K}$  denote  $GL_{1,K}$ . Now also assume that  $K$  is an algebraically closed field.

**Theorem 8.2** (Larsen–Pink). *Let  $G$  be a connected semi-simple algebraic subgroup of  $\mathrm{GL}_{\underline{d},K}$  such that each standard representation  $G \rightarrow \mathrm{GL}_{d_i,K}$  (induced by the projection onto the  $i$ -th factor) is irreducible. Then the data assigning  $\dim(U^G)$  to every  $K$ -linear representation of  $\mathrm{GL}_{\underline{d},K}$  on a finite dimensional vector space  $U$  determines  $G$  up to conjugation in  $\mathrm{GL}_{\underline{d},K}$ .*

*Proof.* This is Theorem 4.2 of [33] on page 574, although there it is only stated in the case when  $K = \mathbb{C}$ . Also note that the condition in the theorem is not only sufficient, but necessary, too.  $\square$

*Remark 8.3.* We would like to make sense of the following principle of Larsen and Pink: "all representations of  $\mathrm{GL}_{\underline{d},K}$  are given by linear algebra." Let  $K$  be again an arbitrary field of characteristic zero. Let  $W$  be the vector-space underlying the tautological  $K$ -linear representation of  $GL_{n,K}$  (i.e. the  $K$ -dimension of  $W$  is  $n$ ). Then we have a  $K$ -linear action of  $GL_{n,K}$  on

$$W^{\otimes m} = \underbrace{W \otimes_K W \otimes \cdots \otimes_K W}_{m\text{-times}},$$

the  $m$ -fold tensor product power of the tautological representation of  $GL_{n,K}$ . The permutation group  $S_m$  acts  $K$ -linearly on  $W^{\otimes m}$  via permuting the factors of the tensor product, and this action commutes with the action of  $GL_{n,K}$ . For every irreducible  $K$ -linear representation  $\rho$  of  $S_m$  let  $\pi_\rho$  be the corresponding idempotent in the group ring  $K[S_m]$ . Then the image  $W^\rho$  of the action of  $\pi_\rho$  on  $W^{\otimes m}$  is a  $GL_{n,K}$ -invariant subspace which is isomorphic to the  $r$ -fold direct sum of an irreducible  $K$ -linear representation of  $GL_{n,K}$  for some  $r$  (depending on  $n$  and  $d$ , of course). Moreover every irreducible  $K$ -linear representation of  $GL_{n,K}$  arises this way. Since every  $K$ -linear representation of  $GL_{n,K}$  is semi-simple, for some positive integer  $d$  its  $d$ -fold direct sum is isomorphic to some direct sum of the representations  $W^\rho$  (for various  $m$  and  $\rho$ ). A similar construction can be carried out for the direct product  $GL_{\underline{d},K}$ .

*Remark 8.4.* The relevance of the fact above to our problem of Tannakian nature is the following. Now let  $\mathbf{T}$  be a  $K$ -linear Tannakian category and let  $\mathcal{F}$  be an object of  $\mathbf{T}$  of rank  $n$ . Then  $S_m$  acts on  $m$ -fold tensor product power  $\mathcal{F}^{\otimes m}$  of  $\mathcal{F}$ , which in turn induces a  $K$ -algebra embedding  $K[S_m] \hookrightarrow \text{End}_{\mathbf{T}}(\mathcal{F}^{\otimes m})$ . As above for every irreducible  $K$ -linear representation  $\rho$  of  $S_m$  let  $\pi_\rho$  be the corresponding idempotent in  $K[S_m]$ , and let  $\mathcal{F}^\rho$  be the image of the action of  $\pi_\rho$  on  $\mathcal{F}^{\otimes m}$ . Now for every field extension  $L/K$  and  $L$ -valued fibre functor  $\omega$  on  $\mathbf{T}$  the action of  $\pi(\mathbf{T}, \omega)$  on  $\omega(\mathcal{F}^\rho)$  is the  $L$ -linear extension of the composition of  $r$ -fold direct sum of the representation  $W_\rho$  with the homomorphism of  $\pi(\mathbf{T}, \omega)$  into the  $L$ -linear automorphism group  $GL_{n,L}$  of  $\omega(\mathcal{F})$  (where  $r$  is the same as above). Moreover as we have remarked above we have a similar construction for every  $K$ -linear representation of  $GL_{d,K}$ .

**Definition 8.5.** We are going to extend Serre's definition (see [41]) of a strictly compatible system of  $l$ -adic Galois representations to involve overconvergent  $F$ -isocrystals. For every number field  $E$  let  $|E|_q$  denote the set of irreducible factors of the semi-simple  $\mathbb{Q}_l$ -algebra  $E \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{Q}_l$ , where  $l$  is either a prime number different from  $p$ , or  $l = q$ . For every  $\lambda \in |E|_q$  let  $E_\lambda$  denote the corresponding factor: it is a finite extension of  $\mathbb{Q}_l$  containing  $E$ . Let  $\mathcal{O}_\lambda^E$  denote the valuation ring of  $E_\lambda$ . We will drop the superscript if the choice of  $E$  is clear. Let  $E_\lambda^{(d)}$  denote the unique unramified extension of  $E_\lambda$  of degree  $d$  (for every  $d \in \mathbb{N}$ ). Note that the factors of  $E \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{Q}_l$  correspond to the places of  $E$  over  $l$  when  $l$  is a prime number.

Let  $E$  be a number field such that factors of  $E \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{Q}_q$  are all totally ramified extensions of  $\mathbb{Q}_q$ . For every  $\lambda \in |E|_q$  which is a factor of  $E \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{Q}_q$  let  $\sigma : E_\lambda \rightarrow E_\lambda$  be the identity map, let  $\mathfrak{U}_\lambda$  be a smooth formal lift of  $U$  to  $\text{Spf}(\mathcal{O}_\lambda)$ , and assume that there is a lift  $F_\sigma$  of the  $q$ -power Frobenius of  $U$ , compatible with  $\sigma$ . By an  $E$ -compatible system (over  $U$ ) we mean a collection  $\{\mathcal{F}_\lambda | \lambda \in |E|_q\}$ , where  $\mathcal{F}_\lambda$  is a lisse  $E_\lambda$ -sheaf on  $U$  for every place  $\lambda \in |E|_q$  of  $E$  not lying over  $p$ , and  $\mathcal{F}_\lambda$  is an object of  $F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(U/E_\lambda)$ , otherwise, and these sheaves are  $E$ -compatible with each other in the sense that for every  $x \in |U|$  the polynomial  $\det(1 - t^{\deg(x)} \cdot \text{Frob}_x(\mathcal{F}_\lambda))$  has coefficients in  $E$  and it is independent of the choice of  $\lambda$ . Clearly this condition implies that the rank  $n$  of  $\mathcal{F}_\lambda$  is independent of  $\lambda$ , which we will call the rank of the  $E$ -compatible system. We say that an  $E$ -compatible system  $\{\mathcal{F}_\lambda | \lambda \in |E|_q\}$  is pure of weight  $w$ , where  $w \in \mathbb{Z}$ , if the eigenvalues of  $\text{Frob}_y(\mathcal{F}_\lambda)$  have absolute value  $q^{dw/2}$  for every complex embedding  $\bar{E}_\lambda \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ , for every  $\lambda \in |E|_q$ , and for every  $y \in |U|$  of degree  $d$ . We say that an  $E$ -compatible system  $\{\mathcal{F}_\lambda | \lambda \in |E|_q\}$  is semi-simple if each  $\mathcal{F}_\lambda$  is a semi-simple object in its respective category.

*Example 8.6.* Let  $\pi : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow U$  be a projective, smooth morphism of  $\mathbb{F}_q$ -schemes. For every prime number  $l \neq p$  and for every natural number  $n$  let  $H^n(\mathfrak{X})_l$  denote the  $n$ -th higher direct image  $R^n \pi_*(\mathbb{Q}_l)$  of the constant  $l$ -adic sheaf  $\mathbb{Q}_l$ , and let  $H^n(\mathfrak{X})_q$  denote the overconvergent  $\mathbb{Q}_q$ -linear  $F$ -isocrystal  $R^n \pi_*(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{X}}^\dagger)$ . Then  $\{H^n(\mathfrak{X})_l | l \in |\mathbb{Q}|_q\}$  is a pure  $\mathbb{Q}$ -compatible system of weight  $n$  over  $U$ , as we saw in the proof of Lemma 7.6.

*Remark 8.7.* We say that an  $E$ -compatible system  $\{\mathcal{F}_\lambda | \lambda \in |E|_q\}$  is mixed, if for every  $\lambda \in |E|_q$  the object  $\mathcal{F}_\lambda$  has a filtration:

$$0 = \mathcal{F}_\lambda^{(0)} \subset \mathcal{F}_\lambda^{(1)} \subset \dots \subset \mathcal{F}_\lambda^{(m_\lambda)} = \mathcal{F}_\lambda$$

such that each successive quotient  $\mathcal{F}_\lambda^{(i+1)}/\mathcal{F}_\lambda^{(i)}$  is pure of some weight in the sense defined above. When  $\{\mathcal{F}_\lambda | \lambda \in |E|_q\}$  is both semi-simple and mixed then we have a

unique direct sum decomposition:

$$\mathcal{F}_\lambda = \bigoplus_{w \in \mathbb{Z}} \mathcal{F}_\lambda^{[w]}$$

for every  $\lambda \in |E|_q$  such that  $\mathcal{F}_\lambda^{[w]}$  is the largest sub-object of  $\mathcal{F}_\lambda$  which is pure of weight  $w$ . Note that  $\{\mathcal{F}_\lambda^{[w]} | \lambda \in |E|_q\}$  is a pure  $E$ -compatible system of weight  $w$ .

**Definition 8.8.** Let  $E$  be a number field of the type above and let  $\{\mathcal{F}_\lambda | \lambda \in |E|_q\}$  be an  $E$ -compatible system over  $U$ . Fix a point  $x \in U(\mathbb{F}_{q^n})$  and let  $\bar{x} \in U(\overline{\mathbb{F}_{q^n}})$  be lying over  $x$ ; then for every  $\lambda \in |E|_q$  which is a place of  $E$  not lying above  $p$  let  $\rho_\lambda : \pi_1(U, \bar{x}) \rightarrow \mathrm{GL}_n(E_\lambda)$  be the representation corresponding to  $\mathcal{F}_\lambda$ , and let  $G_\lambda$  denote the Zariski-closure of the image of  $\rho_\lambda$ . By construction  $G_\lambda/G_\lambda^o$  is a finite quotient of the profinite group  $\pi_1(U, \bar{x})$ . When  $\lambda \in |E|_q$  is a factor of  $E \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{Q}_q$  then let  $G_\lambda$  denote the monodromy group  $\mathrm{Gr}(\mathcal{F}_\lambda, x)$ . As we explained in Remark 4.15 the quotient  $G_\lambda/G_\lambda^o$  can be considered as a finite quotient of  $\pi_1(U, \bar{x})$ , too. We will call  $G_\lambda$  the  $\lambda$ -adic (arithmetic) monodromy group of the  $E$ -compatible system (with respect to the base point  $x$ ).

**Notation 8.9.** Let  $\{\mathcal{F}_\lambda | \lambda \in |E|_q\}$  and  $x, \bar{x}$  be as above. For every  $\lambda \in |E|_q$  which is a place of  $E$  not lying above  $p$  let  $V_\lambda$  denote the fibre  $\bar{x}^*(\mathcal{F}_\lambda)$  of  $\mathcal{F}_\lambda$  over  $\bar{x}$ . When  $\lambda \in |E|_q$  is a factor of  $E \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{Q}_q$  then let  $V_\lambda$  denote the fibre  $\omega_x(\mathcal{F}_\lambda)$ . We have a representation  $\rho_\lambda : \mathrm{Gr}(\mathcal{F}_\lambda, x) \rightarrow \mathrm{Aut}(V_\lambda)$  by definition. For every  $\lambda \in |E|_q$  let  $\rho_\lambda^{\mathrm{alg}}$  denote the representation of  $G_\lambda^o$  on  $V_\lambda$ . Note that the isomorphism class of the triple  $(G_\lambda^o, V_\lambda, \rho_\lambda^{\mathrm{alg}})$  is independent of the choice of  $x$  (and  $\bar{x}$ ) for every  $\lambda \in |E|_q$  which is a place of  $E$  not lying above  $p$ , and similarly the isomorphism class of the triple  $(G_\lambda^o \otimes_{E_\lambda^{(n)}} \overline{E}_\lambda, V_\lambda \otimes_{E_\lambda^{(n)}} \overline{E}_\lambda, \rho_\lambda^{\mathrm{alg}} \otimes_{E_\lambda^{(n)}} \overline{E}_\lambda)$  is independent of the choice of  $x$  for every factor  $\lambda$  of  $E \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{Q}_q$ . Therefore it is justified to drop  $x$  from the notation, as far as the proofs of our results on independence are concerned. We will call the isomorphism class of  $(G_\lambda^o, V_\lambda, \rho_\lambda^{\mathrm{alg}})$  (when  $\lambda$  is not lying above  $p$ ) and  $(G_\lambda^o \otimes_{E_\lambda^{(n)}} \overline{E}_\lambda, V_\lambda \otimes_{E_\lambda^{(n)}} \overline{E}_\lambda, \rho_\lambda^{\mathrm{alg}} \otimes_{E_\lambda^{(n)}} \overline{E}_\lambda)$  (when  $\lambda$  is a factor of  $E \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{Q}_q$ ) the  $\lambda$ -adic monodromy triple of the compatible system.

*Remark 8.10.* Assume for a moment that  $X$  is any smooth over  $\mathbb{F}_q$  and let  $\mathcal{F}$  be an object of  $F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(X/\mathbb{L})$  (for some choice of  $\mathbb{L}$ ,  $\sigma$  and  $F$ ). Let  $\pi : Y \rightarrow X$  be an open immersion with Zariski-dense image and let  $y \in Y(\mathbb{F}_{q^n})$ . The the pull-back functor  $\pi^* : \langle\langle \mathcal{F} \rangle\rangle \rightarrow \langle\langle \pi^*(\mathcal{F}) \rangle\rangle$  with respect to  $\pi$  is a tensor equivalence between  $\langle\langle \mathcal{F} \rangle\rangle$  and  $\langle\langle \pi^*(\mathcal{F}) \rangle\rangle$  by Theorem 3.2 and the global version of Kedlaya's full faithfulness theorem (see [27]), so the induced map  $\mathrm{Gr}(\pi^*(\mathcal{F}), y) \rightarrow \mathrm{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, \pi(x))$  is an isomorphism. Since the same conservativity property holds for the monodromy group of lisse  $K$ -sheaves, where  $K$  is a finite extension of  $\mathbb{Q}_l$ , with  $l \neq p$ , we may shrink the curve  $U$  while we study the monodromy groups of  $E$ -compatible systems without the loss of generality. In particular our convenient assumption on the existence of the lift  $F_\sigma$  is harmless.

*Example 8.11.* Let  $D/E$  be a finite extension such that the factors of  $D \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{Q}_q$  are all totally ramified extensions of  $\mathbb{Q}_q$ . Note that for every index  $l$ , where  $l$  is either a prime number  $l$  different from  $p$ , or  $l = q$ , we have  $D \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{Q}_l = D \otimes_E (E \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{Q}_l)$ , so every factor  $D \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{Q}_l$  is contained by the tensor product of  $D$  and a factor of  $E \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{Q}_l$ . Let  $r : |D|_q \rightarrow |E|_q$  denote the corresponding map. For every  $\lambda \in |D|_q$  which is a factor of  $D \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{Q}_q$  let  $\sigma : D_\lambda \rightarrow D_\lambda$  also denote the identity map by slight

abuse of notation, let  $\mathfrak{U}_\lambda$  be the smooth formal lift  $\mathfrak{U}_{r(\lambda)} \times_{\mathrm{Spf}(\mathcal{O}_{r(\lambda)})} \mathrm{Spf}(\mathcal{O}_\lambda^D)$  of  $U$  to  $\mathrm{Spf}(\mathcal{O}_\lambda^D)$ ; then there is a lift  $F_\sigma$  of the  $q$ -power Frobenius of  $U$  to  $\mathfrak{U}_\lambda$ , compatible with  $\sigma$ . For every place  $\lambda \in |D|_q$  of  $D$  not lying over  $p$  let  $\mathcal{F}_\lambda^D$  denote the  $D_\lambda$ -linear extension  $\mathcal{F}_{r(\lambda)} \otimes_{E_{r(\lambda)}} D_\lambda$  in the category of lisse sheaves, and let  $\mathcal{F}_\lambda^D$  be the  $D_\lambda$ -linear extension  $\mathcal{F}_{r(\lambda)} \otimes_{E_{r(\lambda)}} D_\lambda$  of  $\mathcal{F}_{r(\lambda)}$  corresponding to the extension  $D_\lambda/E_{r(\lambda)}$  and the choices of Frobenii which we have specified, otherwise. More explicitly  $\mathcal{F}_\lambda^D$  is an object of  $F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(U/D_\lambda)$  for every factor of  $D \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{Q}_q$  (which we get from base change from  $\mathfrak{U}_{r(\lambda)}$  to  $\mathfrak{U}_\lambda$ ). Then  $\{\mathcal{F}_\lambda^D | \lambda \in |D|_q\}$  is a  $D$ -compatible system of rank  $n$  over  $V$  which we will call the  $D$ -linear extension of the  $E$ -compatible system  $\{\mathcal{F}_\lambda | \lambda \in |E|_q\}$ .

*Examples 8.12.* Let  $E$  and  $\{\mathcal{F}_\lambda | \lambda \in |E|_q\}$  be as above, and let  $\mathbf{p} : V \rightarrow U$  be a finite étale cover of geometrically connected curves. Then  $\{\mathbf{p}^*(\mathcal{F}_\lambda) | \lambda \in |E|_q\}$  is an  $E$ -compatible system of rank  $n$  over  $V$ . We will call this  $E$ -compatible system the pull-back of  $\{\mathcal{F}_\lambda | \lambda \in |E|_q\}$  with respect to  $\mathbf{p}$ . Let  $d$  be a positive integer and let  $U^{(d)}$  let be base change of  $U$  to  $\mathrm{Spec}(\mathbb{F}_{q^d})$ . Then  $\{\mathcal{F}_\lambda^{(d)} | \lambda \in |E|_q\}$  is an  $E$ -compatible system of rank  $n$  over  $U^{(d)}$ . Note that the factors of  $E \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{Q}_{q^d}$  are all totally ramified extensions of  $\mathbb{Q}_{q^d}$ , so this definition makes sense. Also note that every factor of  $E \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{Q}_{q^d} = (E \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{Q}_q) \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}_q} \mathbb{Q}_{q^d}$  is equal to the tensor product of a factor of  $E \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{Q}_q$  and  $\mathbb{Q}_{q^d}$ , so there is a natural bijection between the sets  $|E|_q$  and  $|E|_{q^d}$ . We will not distinguish between these in all that follows. It is a useful fact that these operations, along with  $D$ -linear extension, preserve the properties of being semi-simple and pure of a given weight.

**Lemma 8.13.** *The  $\lambda$ -adic monodromy triples of  $\{\mathcal{F}_\lambda | \lambda \in |E|_q\}$  and  $\{\mathbf{p}^*(\mathcal{F}_\lambda) | \lambda \in |E|_q\}$  are isomorphic. The same holds for  $\{\mathcal{F}_\lambda | \lambda \in |E|_q\}$  and  $\{\mathcal{F}_\lambda^{(d)} | \lambda \in |E|_q\}$ , too.*

*Proof.* The claims are known for those  $\lambda \in |E|_q$  which are places of  $E$  not lying above  $p$ , and the first claim follows from Corollary 4.21 for factors of  $E \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{Q}_q$ . Now fix a point  $y : \mathrm{Spec}(\mathbb{F}_{q^n}) \rightarrow U$  of degree  $n$ . The homomorphism  $\phi$  of Proposition 4.18 furnishes an isomorphism  $\mathrm{Gr}(\mathcal{F}_\lambda^{(d)}, y)^\circ \rightarrow \mathrm{Gr}(\mathcal{F}_\lambda, y)^\circ$ . The second claim is now clear.  $\square$

*Remark 8.14.* Note that a similar claim holds for  $D$ -linear extensions, where  $D/E$  is a finite extension of the type considered above. More precisely by slight abuse of notation for every place  $\lambda \in |D|_q$  of  $D$  not lying over  $p$  let  $(G_\lambda^\circ, V_\lambda, \rho_\lambda^{\mathrm{alg}})$  denote the  $\lambda$ -adic triple of  $\{\mathcal{F}_\lambda^D | \lambda \in |D|_q\}$ , and for every factor  $\lambda$  of  $D \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{Q}_q$  let  $(G_\lambda^\circ \otimes_{D_\lambda^{(n)}} \overline{D}_\lambda, V_\lambda \otimes_{D_\lambda^{(n)}} \overline{D}_\lambda, \rho_\lambda^{\mathrm{alg}} \otimes_{D_\lambda^{(n)}} \overline{D}_\lambda)$  denote the  $\lambda$ -adic triple of  $\{\mathcal{F}_\lambda^D | \lambda \in |D|_q\}$ . Then for every place  $\lambda \in |D|_q$  of  $D$  not lying over  $p$  the triples  $(G_\lambda^\circ, V_\lambda, \rho_\lambda^{\mathrm{alg}})$  and  $(G_\lambda^\circ \otimes_{E_{r(\lambda)}} D_\lambda, V_\lambda \otimes_{E_{r(\lambda)}} D_\lambda, \rho_\lambda^{\mathrm{alg}} \otimes_{E_{r(\lambda)}} D_\lambda)$  are isomorphic, and for every factor  $\lambda$  of  $D \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{Q}_q$  the triples  $(G_\lambda^\circ \otimes_{D_\lambda^{(n)}} \overline{D}_\lambda, V_\lambda \otimes_{D_\lambda^{(n)}} \overline{D}_\lambda, \rho_\lambda^{\mathrm{alg}} \otimes_{D_\lambda^{(n)}} \overline{D}_\lambda)$  and  $(G_{r(\lambda)}^\circ \otimes_{E_{r(\lambda)}^{(n)}} \overline{E}_{r(\lambda)}, V_{r(\lambda)} \otimes_{E_{r(\lambda)}^{(n)}} \overline{E}_{r(\lambda)}, \rho_{r(\lambda)}^{\mathrm{alg}} \otimes_{E_{r(\lambda)}^{(n)}} \overline{E}_{r(\lambda)})$  are isomorphic, too. This is trivial when  $\lambda$  is not lying over  $p$ , and follows from Lemma 4.24, otherwise.

The following proposition, our first on independence, is an extension of a classical result of Serre to  $p$ -adic monodromy groups.

**Proposition 8.15.** *The quotient  $G_\lambda/G_\lambda^\circ$  is independent of  $\lambda$ . In particular if  $G_\lambda$  is connected for some  $\lambda$  then it is so for all  $\lambda$ .*

*Proof.* It will be sufficient to prove that for every factor  $\lambda$  of  $E \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{Q}_q$  and for every place  $\kappa \in |E|_q$  not lying over  $p$  the quotients  $G_\lambda/G_\lambda^o$  and  $G_\kappa/G_\kappa^o$  are the same as quotients of  $\mathrm{Gr}(F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(U/E_\lambda), x)$ . So fix  $\lambda$  now. The affine group scheme  $\mathrm{Gr}(F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(U/E_\lambda), x)$  is the projective limit of the monodromy groups  $\mathrm{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, x)$  where  $\mathcal{F}$  runs through all objects of  $F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(U/E_\lambda)$ . We will define a topology on  $G = \mathrm{Gr}(F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(U/E_\lambda), x)(\overline{E}_\lambda)$  as follows. A subset  $Z \subseteq G$  if and only if there is an  $\mathcal{F}$  as above such that  $Z$  is the pre-image of a Zariski closed subset  $Z' \subseteq \mathrm{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, x)(\overline{E}_\lambda)$  with respect to the projection

$$\rho_{\mathcal{F}} : G = \mathrm{Gr}(F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(U/E_\lambda), x)(\overline{E}_\lambda) \rightarrow \mathrm{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, x)(\overline{E}_\lambda).$$

**Lemma 8.16.** *Let  $g \in G$  and let  $H \subseteq G$  be an open subgroup. Then the set*

$$\mathcal{H}(g) = \{gH \cap \mathrm{Frob}_y | y \in |U|\}$$

*is dense in  $gH$ .*

*Proof.* It will be sufficient to prove that for every such object  $\mathcal{F}$  of  $F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(U/E_\lambda)$  the image of  $\mathcal{H}(g)$  is Zariski-dense in the image of  $gH$  with respect to the surjective homomorphism  $\rho_{\mathcal{F}} : G \rightarrow \mathrm{Gr}(\mathcal{F}, x)(\overline{E}_\lambda)$ . By assumption there is an open subgroup scheme  $\mathbf{H} \subseteq \mathrm{Gr}(F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(U/E_\lambda), x)$  of finite index such that  $H = \mathbf{H}(\overline{E}_\lambda)$ . So there is an object  $\mathcal{C}$  of  $F_\sigma\text{-Isoc}^\dagger(U/E_\lambda)$  which corresponds to a faithful finite-dimensional representation of the quotient  $G/H$ , that is, the kernel of the projection  $\rho_{\mathcal{C}}$  is  $H$ . Since  $\rho_{\mathcal{F}}$  factors through  $\rho_{\mathcal{F} \oplus \mathcal{C}}$ , it is enough to prove the claim above for  $\mathcal{F} \oplus \mathcal{C}$ . Since  $\rho_{\mathcal{C}}$  also factors through  $\rho_{\mathcal{F} \oplus \mathcal{C}}$ , the kernel of  $\rho_{\mathcal{F} \oplus \mathcal{C}}$  is contained by  $H$ . So we may assume without the loss of generality that kernel of  $\rho_{\mathcal{F}}$  is contained by  $H$ . In this case:

$$\rho_{\mathcal{F}}(\mathcal{H}(g)) = \{\rho_{\mathcal{F}}(g)\rho_{\mathcal{F}}(H) \cap \mathrm{Frob}_y(\mathcal{F}) | y \in |U|\},$$

so the claim follows from Theorem 4.13.  $\square$

Now for every  $\kappa$  which is either a place  $\in |E|_q$  not lying over  $p$  or is  $\lambda$  let  $\Gamma_\kappa \subseteq G$  be the kernel of the surjective homomorphism  $G \rightarrow G_\kappa/G_\kappa^o$ . It will be enough to show that for every  $g \in G$  whether  $g \in \Gamma_\kappa$  is independent of  $\kappa$ . So in order to conclude the proof of Proposition 8.15 it will be enough, by Proposition 8.1, to show the following

**Lemma 8.17.** *The Zariski-closure of  $ch(\rho_\kappa(g)G_\kappa^o)$  is independent of the choice of  $\kappa$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $\kappa$  be any place in  $|E|_q$  not lying over  $p$  and set  $H = \Gamma_\lambda \cap \Gamma_\kappa$ . It is an open subgroup of  $G$  contained by both  $\Gamma_\lambda$  and  $\Gamma_\kappa$ . By Lemma 8.16 above the set

$$\mathcal{H}(g) = \{gH \cap \mathrm{Frob}_y | y \in |U|\}$$

is dense in  $gH$ . So in particular  $\rho_{\mathcal{F}_\lambda}(\mathcal{H}(g))$  is Zariski-dense in  $\rho_{\mathcal{F}_\lambda}(gH)$ . Since  $H$  is an open subgroup of finite index in  $\Gamma_\lambda$ , and  $G_\lambda^o$  is connected, we get that the Zariski-closure of  $\rho_{\mathcal{F}_\lambda}(\mathcal{H}(g))$  is  $gG_\lambda^o$ . By Remark 4.15 the profinite group  $\pi_1(U, \overline{x})$  is the quotient of  $G$ , and the quotient map  $\pi^o : G \rightarrow \pi_1(U, \overline{x})$  is continuous with respect the profinite topology on  $\pi_1(U, \overline{x})$  and the topology on  $G$  introduced at the beginning of the proof of Proposition 8.15. Therefore  $\rho_\kappa \circ \pi^o(\mathcal{H}(g))$  is dense in  $\rho_\kappa \circ \pi^o(gH)$  in the  $\kappa$ -adic topology, where  $\rho_\kappa : \pi_1(U, \overline{x}) \rightarrow \mathrm{GL}_n(E_\kappa)$  is the representation corresponding to  $\mathcal{F}_\kappa$ , as in Definition 8.8. Since  $H$  is an open subgroup of finite index in  $\Gamma_\kappa$ , and  $G_\kappa^o$  is connected, we get that the Zariski-closure of  $\rho_\kappa \circ \pi^o(\mathcal{H}(g))$



is  $gG_\kappa^o$ . By Lemma 4.16 we have  $ch(\rho_{\mathcal{F}_\lambda}(\mathcal{H}(g))) = ch(\rho_\kappa \circ \pi^o(\mathcal{H}(g)))$ , so the claim is now clear.  $\square$

**Definition 8.18.** Let  $\bar{U}$  denote the base change of  $U$  to  $\bar{\mathbb{F}}_q$ . Assume now that  $U$  is geometrically connected, and consider Grothendieck's short exact sequence of étale fundamental groups for  $U$ :

$$(8.18.1) \quad 1 \longrightarrow \pi_1(\bar{U}, \bar{x}) \longrightarrow \pi_1(U, \bar{x}) \longrightarrow \text{Gal}(\bar{\mathbb{F}}_q/\mathbb{F}_q) \longrightarrow 1,$$

which is an exact sequence of profinite groups in the category of topological groups. Let  $G_\lambda^{geo}$  denote the Zariski closure of  $\pi_1(\bar{U}, \bar{x})$  with respect to  $\rho_\lambda$ , if  $\lambda$  is a place  $\in |E|_q$  not lying over  $p$ , and let  $G_\lambda^{geo}$  denote the image of  $\text{DGal}(\mathcal{F}_\lambda, x)$  with respect to  $\rho_\lambda$ , otherwise. We will call  $G_\lambda^{geo}$  the  $\lambda$ -adic geometric monodromy group. It is a normal subgroup of  $G_\lambda$ . When the  $E$ -compatible system  $\{\mathcal{F}_\lambda | \lambda \in |E|_q\}$  is pure then  $G_\lambda^{geo}$  is semi-simple, and its identity component is the derived group of  $G_\lambda^o$ . This is well-known for  $\lambda \in |E|_q$  not lying over  $p$  (see 1.3.9 and 3.4.1 of [14]), and follows from Proposition 4.12, otherwise.

*Examples 8.19.* Let  $E$  and  $\{\mathcal{F}_\lambda | \lambda \in |E|_q\}$  be as above. For every integer  $n \in \mathbb{Z}$  let  $\mathcal{F}_\lambda(n)$  denote the  $n$ -th Tate twist of  $\mathcal{F}_\lambda$  for every  $\lambda \in |E|_q$ . Recall that for every factor  $\lambda$  of  $E \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{Q}_q$  this means that  $\mathcal{F}_\lambda(n)^\wedge$  is the same as  $\mathcal{F}_\lambda^\wedge$ , and the Frobenius of  $\mathcal{F}_\lambda(n)$  is  $q^{-n}$  times the Frobenius of  $\mathcal{F}_\lambda$ . Then  $\{\mathcal{F}_\lambda(n) | \lambda \in |E|_q\}$  is an  $E$ -compatible system which is pure of weight  $w - 2n$  if  $\{\mathcal{F}_\lambda | \lambda \in |E|_q\}$  is pure of weight  $w$ . Moreover let  $\mathcal{F}_\lambda^\vee$  denote the dual of  $\mathcal{F}_\lambda$  for every  $\lambda \in |E|_q$  (in its respective Tannakian category). Then  $\{\mathcal{F}_\lambda^\vee | \lambda \in |E|_q\}$  is an  $E$ -compatible system which is pure of weight  $-w$  if  $\{\mathcal{F}_\lambda | \lambda \in |E|_q\}$  is pure of weight  $w$ .

**Proposition 8.20.** *Let  $\{\mathcal{F}_\lambda | \lambda \in |E|_q\}$  be a semi-simple pure  $E$ -compatible system of weight  $w$  over  $U$ . Then the  $E_\lambda$ -dimension of the space of invariants  $V_\lambda^{G_\lambda^{geo}}$  (when  $\lambda \in |E|_q$  is not lying over  $p$ ) and the  $E_\lambda^{(n)}$ -dimension of the space of invariants  $V_\lambda^{G_\lambda^{geo}}$  (when  $\lambda$  is a factor  $E \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{Q}_q$ ) is independent of  $\lambda$ .*

*Proof.* The  $L$ -function:

$$L(U, \mathcal{F}_\lambda^\vee(1), t) = \prod_{y \in |U|} \det(1 - t^{\deg(y)} \cdot \text{Frob}_y(\mathcal{F}_\lambda^\vee(1)))^{-1}$$

of  $\mathcal{F}_\lambda^\vee(1)$  is a power series with coefficients in  $E$  and it is independent of the choice of  $\lambda$ . It is a rational function by the Grothendieck–Verdier trace formula when  $\lambda$  is a place of  $E$  not above  $p$ , and by the Etesse-Le Stum trace formula (see Theorem 6.3 of [17] on pages 570–571) and the finiteness of rigid cohomology in coefficients (see [28]), otherwise. Therefore it will be enough to show that dimension of  $V_\lambda^{G_\lambda^{geo}}$  is equal to sum of the orders of poles of all Weil numbers of weight  $-w$ . This was proved for  $\lambda$  which is a place of  $E$  not above  $p$  in [34] (see the proof of Proposition 2.1 on page 566). We are going to use the analogous argument to show the same for every irreducible factor of  $E \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{Q}_q$ .

By the Etesse-Le Stum trace formula:

$$L(U, \mathcal{F}_\lambda^\vee(1), t) = \prod_{i=0}^2 \det(1 - t \cdot F^f | H_{rig,c}^i(U, \mathcal{F}_\lambda^\vee(1)))^{(-1)^{i+1}}.$$

Since  $\mathcal{F}_\lambda^\vee(1)$  is pure of weight  $-2 - w$ , for  $i = 0, 1$  the group  $H_{rig,c}^i(U, \mathcal{F}_\lambda^\vee(1))$  is mixed of weight  $\leq -2 - w + i$  by Theorem 5.3.2 of [29] on page 1445; in particular



it has weights  $< -w$ . Therefore the first two factors of the product above do not contribute to the order of the pole at any Weil number of weight  $w$ . So the sum of the orders of poles of all Weil numbers of weight  $-w$  is just the dimension of  $H_{rig,c}^2(U, \mathcal{F}_\lambda^\vee(1))$  over  $E_\lambda$ . Since there is a perfect pairing:

$$\mathcal{F}_\lambda \otimes \mathcal{F}_\lambda^\vee(1) \longrightarrow \mathcal{O}_U^\dagger(1),$$

by Poincaré duality (see Theorem 9.5 of [11] on pages 753–754) we get that the latter is the  $E_\lambda$ -dimension of  $H_{rig}^0(U, \mathcal{F}_\lambda)$ . The latter is the rank of the largest trivial sub-object of  $\mathcal{F}_\lambda^\wedge$ . This is the same as the  $E_\lambda^{(n)}$ -dimension of the space of  $\mathrm{DGal}(\mathcal{F}_\lambda, x)$ -invariants of  $\omega_x(\mathcal{F}_\lambda)$ .  $\square$

*Example 8.21.* Let  $\{\mathcal{F}_\lambda | \lambda \in |E|_q\}$  be an  $E$ -compatible system of rank  $n$ . Every  $E$ -linear representation  $\rho$  of  $GL_{n,E}$  gives rise to an  $E_\lambda$ -linear representation of  $GL_{n,E_\lambda}$ , by base change, which we will denote by the same symbol by abuse of notation. We may apply the construction of Remark 8.4 to each  $\mathcal{F}_\lambda$  (corresponding to the representation  $\rho$ ) to get a  $E$ -compatible system  $\{\mathcal{F}_\lambda^\rho | \lambda \in |E|_q\}$  which is semi-simple if  $\{\mathcal{F}_\lambda | \lambda \in |E|_q\}$  is, and if the latter is also mixed, the former is mixed, too. If the representation  $\rho$  is faithful, then both the arithmetic monodromy groups and the geometric monodromy groups of the new  $E$ -compatible system are isomorphic to that of the original system.

We say that a finite extension  $D/E$  of number fields is  $d$ -admissible (where  $d$  is a positive integer) if all irreducible factors of  $D \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{Q}_{q^d}$  are totally ramified extensions of  $\mathbb{Q}_{q^d}$ . In this case all irreducible factors of  $E \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{Q}_{q^d}$  are totally ramified extensions of  $\mathbb{Q}_{q^d}$ , too, so the map  $r : |D|_{q^d} \rightarrow |E|_{q^d}$  in Example 8.11 is well-defined.

**Proposition 8.22.** *Let  $\{\mathcal{F}_\lambda | \lambda \in |E|_q\}$  be a semi-simple pure  $E$ -compatible system of rank  $n$  over  $U$ . If  $G_\lambda^{geo}$  is connected for some  $\lambda$ , then it is so for every  $\lambda$ .*

*Proof.* Assume that there are  $\delta, \kappa \in |E|_q$  such that  $G_\delta^{geo}$  is connected, while  $G_\kappa^{geo}$  is not. Then by Lemma 2.3 of [34] there is a representation  $\rho$  of  $GL_{n,E_\kappa}$  such that the dimensions of the  $G_\kappa^{geo}$ -invariants and of the  $(G_\kappa^{geo})^o$ -invariants on the fibre of  $\mathcal{F}_\kappa^\rho$  at  $x$  are different. By switching to  $\{\mathcal{F}_\lambda^{(d)} | \lambda \in |E|_q\}$  for a suitably divisible  $d$ , taking a finite extension  $K/E$ , which we may assume to be  $d$ -admissible, and switching to the  $K$ -linear extension of  $\{\mathcal{F}_\lambda^{(d)} | \lambda \in |E|_q\}$ , we may assume that  $\rho$  is actually the base change of an  $E$ -linear representation of  $GL_{n,E}$  to  $E_\lambda$ , since these operations do not change the geometric monodromy groups. (This fact is well-known for those elements of  $|E|_q$  which do not lie over  $p$ , and follows from Lemma 4.24, otherwise.) By slight abuse of notation let  $\rho$  denote the latter representation, too. By switching to  $\{\mathcal{F}_\lambda^\rho | \lambda \in |E|_q\}$ , we may assume that the dimensions of the  $G_\kappa^{geo}$ -invariants and of the  $(G_\kappa^{geo})^o$ -invariants on the fibre of  $\mathcal{F}_\lambda$  at  $x$  are different without the loss of generality.

For every finite étale cover  $\mathbf{p} : V \rightarrow U$  of geometrically connected curves and for every  $\lambda \in |E|_q$  let  $G_\lambda^{geo}(\mathbf{p})$  denote the base change of the  $\lambda$ -adic geometric monodromy group of the pull-back of  $\{\mathcal{F}_\lambda | \lambda \in |E|_q\}$  with respect to  $\mathbf{p}$  to  $\overline{E}_\lambda$ . Let  $\overline{V}_\lambda$  denote  $V_\lambda \otimes_{E_\lambda} \overline{E}_\lambda$ , if  $\lambda \in |E|_q$  is not lying over  $p$ , and  $V_\lambda \otimes_{E_\lambda^{(n)}} \overline{E}_\lambda$ , otherwise. The map  $\mathbf{p}$  induces a homomorphism  $G_\lambda^{geo}(\mathbf{p}) \rightarrow G_\lambda^{geo}$  which is an open immersion: this is known, when  $\lambda \in |E|_q$  is not lying over  $p$ , and follows from Corollary 4.23, otherwise. This implies that  $G_\delta^{geo}(\mathbf{p}) \rightarrow G_\delta^{geo}$  induced by  $\mathbf{p}$  is an isomorphism for every  $\mathbf{p}$ . On the other there is a  $\mathbf{p}$  such that the image of  $G_\delta^{geo}(\mathbf{p}) \rightarrow G_\delta^{geo}$  is

$(G_\kappa^{geo})^o$ . The latter is known, when  $\lambda \in |E|_q$  is not lying over  $p$ , and follows from Proposition 4.25, otherwise. By Proposition 8.20 we have:

$$\dim(\overline{V}_\delta^{G_\delta^{geo}}) = \dim(\overline{V}_\kappa^{G_\kappa^{geo}}) \text{ and } \dim(\overline{V}_\delta^{G_\delta^{geo}(\mathbf{p})}) = \dim(\overline{V}_\kappa^{G_\kappa^{geo}(\mathbf{p})}),$$

on the other hand by the above:

$$\dim(\overline{V}_\delta^{G_\delta^{geo}}) = \dim(\overline{V}_\delta^{G_\delta^{geo}(\mathbf{p})}) \text{ and } \dim(\overline{V}_\kappa^{G_\kappa^{geo}}) \neq \dim(\overline{V}_\kappa^{G_\kappa^{geo}(\mathbf{p})})$$

which is a contradiction.  $\square$

**Theorem 8.23.** *Let  $\{\mathcal{F}_\lambda | \lambda \in |E|_q\}$  be a semi-simple pure  $E$ -compatible system of weight  $w$  over  $U$ . Then there exists a finite extension  $K/E$ , a connected split semi-simple algebraic group  $\mathcal{G}$  over  $K$  and a  $K$ -linear vector space  $V$  equipped with a  $K$ -linear representation  $\rho$  of  $\mathcal{G}$  such that for some positive integer  $d$  with  $K/E$  being  $d$ -admissible, for every  $\lambda \in |K|_{q^d}$  not lying over  $p$  the triples:*

$$(\mathcal{G} \otimes_K K_\lambda, V \otimes_K K_\lambda, \rho \otimes_K K_\lambda)$$

and

$$(G_{r(\lambda)}^o \otimes_{E_{r(\lambda)}} K_\lambda, V_{r(\lambda)} \otimes_{E_{r(\lambda)}} K_\lambda, \rho_{r(\lambda)}^{\text{alg}} \otimes_{E_{r(\lambda)}} K_\lambda)$$

are isomorphic, and for every  $\lambda \in |K|_{q^d}$  which is a factor  $\lambda$  of  $K \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{Q}_{q^d}$ :

$$(\mathcal{G} \otimes_K K_\lambda^{(n)}, V \otimes_K K_\lambda^{(n)}, \rho \otimes_K K_\lambda^{(n)})$$

and

$$(G_{r(\lambda)}^o \otimes_{E_{r(\lambda)}^{(n)}} K_\lambda^{(n)}, V_{r(\lambda)} \otimes_{E_{r(\lambda)}^{(n)}} K_\lambda^{(n)}, \rho_{r(\lambda)}^{\text{alg}} \otimes_{E_{r(\lambda)}^{(n)}} K_\lambda^{(n)})$$

are isomorphic.

*Proof.* By Chin's main result (see Theorem 1.4 of [8] on page 724) there is a finite extension  $K/E$ , a connected split semi-simple algebraic group  $\mathcal{G}$  over  $K$  and a  $K$ -linear vector space  $V$  equipped with a  $K$ -linear representation  $\rho$  of  $\mathcal{G}$  such that the condition in the claim holds for every  $\lambda \in |K|_{q^d}$  not lying over  $p$ . Now let  $d$  be a positive integer such that  $K/E$  is  $d$ -admissible. We may assume that  $d$  is actually 1 by switching to the compatible system  $\{\mathcal{F}_\lambda^{(d)} | \lambda \in |E|_q\}$  and using Lemma 8.13. Similarly we may assume that our chosen base point  $x$  has degree one. We may also assume that  $K = E$  using Remark 8.14. By taking a suitable finite étale covering of  $U$  and using Lemma 8.13 we may even assume that the arithmetic monodromy groups are connected, and using Lemma 8.22 we can assume that the geometric monodromy groups are connected, too.

Taking an additional finite extension of  $E$ , if it is necessary, we can also assume that the representation  $\rho$  is a direct sum of absolutely irreducible representations:

$$\rho = \bigoplus_{j=1}^r \rho_j.$$

This decomposition induces another decomposition:

$$\mathcal{F}_\lambda \cong \bigoplus_{j=1}^r \mathcal{F}_{j,\lambda}$$

for every  $\lambda \in |E|_q$  not lying over  $p$  such that for every index  $j$  the collection  $\{\mathcal{F}_{j,\lambda} | \lambda \in |E|_q, \lambda \not\equiv p\}$  is a semi-simple pure  $E$ -compatible system of weight  $w$  over  $U$  in the usual sense. By Abe's main result in [1] we may assume that this collection extends to a full semi-simple pure  $E$ -compatible system  $\{\mathcal{F}_{j,\lambda} | \lambda \in |E|_q\}$  of weight

$w$  over  $U$ , at the prize of extending  $E$  further, switching to compatible systems over  $U^{(d)}$ , and arguing as above.

Then  $\{\oplus_{j=1}^r \mathcal{F}_{j,\lambda} \mid \lambda \in |E|_q\}$  is also a semi-simple pure  $E$ -compatible system of weight  $w$  over  $U$ , so we get that for every  $\lambda \in |E|_q$  which is a factor  $\lambda$  of  $E \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{Q}_q$  the  $F$ -isocrystals  $\oplus_{j=1}^r \mathcal{F}_{j,\lambda}$  and  $\mathcal{F}_\lambda$  are compatible in the sense that for every  $y \in |U|$  the polynomials:

$$\det(1 - t^{\deg(y)} \cdot \text{Frob}_y(\bigoplus_{j=1}^r \mathcal{F}_{j,\lambda})) \text{ and } \det(1 - t^{\deg(y)} \cdot \text{Frob}_y(\mathcal{F}_\lambda))$$

are equal. It is a consequence of the  $p$ -adic Chebotarëv density theorem (Theorem 4.13) that this implies that

$$\mathcal{F}_\lambda \cong \bigoplus_{j=1}^r \mathcal{F}_{j,\lambda}$$

for every such  $\lambda$ , too (see Corollary 10.2 of [22]). Note that, by construction, all  $\mathcal{F}_{j,\lambda}$  are absolutely irreducible when  $\lambda$  is not over  $p$ . The same is true for all other  $\lambda$ , too. Indeed assume that this is not the case; then after taking a finite extension of  $E$ , if it is necessary, there is a factor  $\lambda$  of  $E \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{Q}_q$  such that  $\mathcal{F}_{j,\lambda} \cong \mathcal{F}_{j,\lambda}^< \oplus \mathcal{F}_{j,\lambda}^>$  for some  $F$ -isocrystals of positive rank. Fix a  $\kappa \in |E|_q$  not over  $p$  and apply Abe's theorem quoted above to get two lisse semi-simple  $E_\kappa$ -sheaves  $\mathcal{F}_{j,\kappa}^<$  and  $\mathcal{F}_{j,\kappa}^>$  on  $U$  compatible with  $\mathcal{F}_{j,\lambda}^<$  and  $\mathcal{F}_{j,\lambda}^>$ , respectively (again possibly after taking a finite extension of  $E$ , etc.). By the usual Chebotarëv density theorem we have  $\mathcal{F}_{j,\kappa} \cong \mathcal{F}_{j,\kappa}^< \oplus \mathcal{F}_{j,\kappa}^>$ , but this is a contradiction.

For every  $j$  let  $d_j$  be the rank of the  $E$ -compatible system  $\{\mathcal{F}_{j,\lambda} \mid \lambda \in |E|_q\}$  and set  $\underline{d} = (d_1, d_2, \dots, d_r) \in \mathbb{N}^m$ . Similarly to Notation 8.9 let  $V_{j,\lambda}$  denote the fibre of  $\mathcal{F}_{j,\lambda}$  with respect to  $\bar{x}$ , when  $\lambda \in |K|_{q^a}$  is not lying over  $p$ , and with respect to  $x$ , otherwise. For every  $j$  let  $V_j$  be the  $K$ -linear vector space underlying the representation  $\rho_j$ . Choosing a basis for each  $V_j$  and  $V_{j,\lambda}$ , the group  $\mathcal{G}$  (respectively  $G_\lambda$ ) become a subgroup of  $GL_{\underline{d},E}$  (respectively  $GL_{\underline{d},E_\lambda}$ ), unique up to conjugation. We only need to show that for every  $\lambda \in |E|_q$  the base change of  $\mathcal{G}$  and  $G_\lambda$  to  $\bar{E}_\lambda$  are conjugate as subgroups of  $GL_{\underline{d},\bar{E}_\lambda}$ . Note that we already know this for all  $\lambda$  not over  $p$ .

For every linear algebraic group  $\mathbf{G}$  let  $\mathbf{G}'$  and  $Z(\mathbf{G})$  denote the derived group of  $\mathbf{G}$  and the centre of  $\mathbf{G}$ , respectively. Note that  $Z(\mathcal{G})$  is a subgroup of  $Z(GL_{\underline{d},E})$  since all representations  $\rho_j$  are irreducible. Similarly  $Z(G_\lambda)$  is a subgroup of  $Z(GL_{\underline{d},E_\lambda})$ . Therefore these groups are invariant under conjugation, and hence the same holds for their identity components, too. Since  $\mathcal{G}$  (respectively  $G_\lambda$ ) is the product of  $\mathcal{G}'$  and  $Z(\mathcal{G})^\circ$  (respectively of  $G'_\lambda$  and  $Z(G_\lambda)^\circ$ ), it will be enough to show that  $\mathcal{G}'$  and  $G'_\lambda$  are conjugate after base change to  $\bar{E}_\lambda$ , and similarly  $Z(\mathcal{G})^\circ$  and  $Z(G_\lambda)^\circ$  are equal after base change to  $\bar{E}_\lambda$ .

In order to prove the first, by the remark at the end of Definition 8.18 it suffices to prove that for any pair  $\lambda, \kappa \in |E|_q$ , after fixing an isomorphism  $\bar{E}_\lambda \cong \bar{E}_\kappa$ , the subgroups

$$G_\lambda^{geo} \times_{E_\lambda} \bar{E}_\lambda \subseteq GL_{\underline{d},\bar{E}_\lambda} \text{ and } G_\kappa^{geo} \times_{E_\kappa} \bar{E}_\kappa \subseteq GL_{\underline{d},\bar{E}_\kappa}$$

are all conjugate. Every representation of  $GL_{\underline{d},\bar{E}_\lambda} \cong GL_{\underline{d},\bar{E}_\kappa}$ , or after a finite extension of  $E$ , of  $GL_{\underline{d},E}$ , on a finite dimensional vector space  $W$  can be obtained from the standard representations by means of linear algebra (as explained in Remark

8.3). Thus it gives rise to a semi-simple pure  $E$ -compatible system (see Example 8.21) to which we can apply Proposition 8.20. It follows that the dimension of invariants of  $G_\lambda^{geo}$  in  $V_\lambda^\rho$  is independent of  $\lambda$ . The desired assertion is now a consequence of Theorem 8.2.

Taking the determinant in each factor, the connected group  $G_\lambda$  maps onto a subtorus  $T_\lambda$  of the product of multiplicative groups  $\mathbb{G}_{m,E_\lambda}^r$ . Every character of  $\mathbb{G}_{m,E_\lambda}^r$ , or equivalently, of  $\mathbb{G}_{m,E}^r$ , gives rise to an  $E$ -compatible system on  $U$ , so the question whether it is trivial on  $T_\lambda$  is independent of  $\lambda$  (for example by the usual and the  $p$ -adic Chebotarëv theorems). Thus each  $T_\lambda = T \times_E E_\lambda$  for some subtorus  $T \subseteq \mathbb{G}_{m,E}^r$ . The centre of  $\mathrm{GL}_{d,E_\lambda}$  maps onto  $\mathbb{G}_{m,E_\lambda}^r$ , and the identity component of the pre-image of  $T_\lambda$  is  $Z(G_\lambda)^o$ . In other words, these identity components come from a fixed torus in the centre of  $\mathrm{GL}_{d,E}$ .  $\square$

By slightly modifying the argument above, we may give a proof of Theorem 1.4 which does not rely on Abe's extension of the Langlands correspondence for overconvergent  $F$ -isocrystals.

*Proof of Theorem 1.4.* The  $\mathbb{Q}$ -compatible system  $\{H^1(A)_l | l \in |\mathbb{Q}|_q\}$  is also pure, as we noted in Example 8.6, it is the same as the one we have considered in the introduction by Lemma 7.13, and it is semi-simple by Theorem 1.2. Switching from  $U$  to  $U^{(n)}$ , and using Lemma 8.13, we may assume that the base point  $x$  has degree one. By taking a finite étale cover of  $U$  we may assume that all  $G_\lambda$  and  $G_\lambda^{geo}$  are connected, by arguing as above. Then in particular  $\mathrm{End}_L(A_L) = \mathrm{End}_{\overline{L}}(A_L)$ . By the Wedderburn theorem, the semi-simple algebra  $\mathrm{End}_L(A_L) \otimes \mathbb{Q}$  splits over some number field  $E$ . Switching from  $U$  to  $U^{(m)}$  for some sufficiently divisible  $m$ , and using Lemma 8.13, we may assume that the base point  $x$  has degree one and  $E/\mathbb{Q}$  is 1-admissible. Choose an isomorphism with a direct sum of matrix algebras:

$$\mathrm{End}_L(A_L) \cong \prod_{j=1}^r M_{n_j}(E).$$

For every  $\lambda \in |E|_q$  this induces a decomposition:

$$\mathcal{F}_{r(\lambda)} \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}_{r(\lambda)}} E_\lambda \cong \bigoplus_{j=1}^r \mathcal{F}_{j,\lambda}^{\oplus n_j}.$$

By Theorems 1.1 and 1.2 the  $\mathcal{F}_{j,\lambda}$  are absolutely irreducible and pairwise inequivalent. For fixed  $j$  and varying  $\lambda$  they form a pure  $E$ -compatible system over  $U$ . Now we can conclude the argument similarly to the proof of Theorem 8.23.  $\square$

## REFERENCES

- [1] T. Abe, *Langlands correspondence for isocrystals and existence of crystalline companion for curves*, arXiv:1310.0528, (2013).
- [2] T. Abe and D. Caro, *Theory of weights in  $p$ -adic cohomology*, arXiv:1303.0662, (2013).
- [3] P. Berthelot, L. Breen and W. Messing, *Théorie de Dieudonné cristalline II*, Lecture Notes in Mathematics **930**, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, (1982).
- [4] P. Berthelot and W. Messing, *Théorie de Dieudonné cristalline III*, The Grothendieck Festschrift I, Progress in Mathematics **86** Birkhäuser, 1990, pp. 171–247.
- [5] P. Berthelot, *Cohomologie rigide et cohomologie rigide à supports propres, première partie*, Prépublication IRMAR 96-03, 89 pages (1996).
- [6] P. Berthelot, *Dualité de Poincaré et formule de Künneth en cohomologie rigide*, C. R. Acad. Sci. Paris **325** (1997), 493–498.

- [7] P. Berthelot, *Finitude et pureté cohomologique en cohomologie rigide*, Invent. Math. **128** (1997), 329–377.
- [8] Ch.-Wh. Chin, *Independence of  $\ell$  of monodromy groups*, J. Amer. Math. Soc. **17** (2004), 723–747.
- [9] R. Crew, *F-isocrystals and their monodromy groups*, Ann. Sci. École Norm. Sup. **25** (1992), 429–464.
- [10] R. Crew, *The  $p$ -adic monodromy of a generic abelian scheme in characteristic  $p$* , in  *$p$ -adic methods in number theory and algebraic geometry*, 59–74, Contemp. Math., 133, Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, RI, 1992.
- [11] R. Crew, *Finiteness theorems for the cohomology of an overconvergent isocrystal on a curve*, Ann. Sci. École Norm. Sup. **31** (1998), 717–763.
- [12] A. J. de Jong, *Crystalline Dieudonné module theory via formal and rigid geometry*, Publ. Math. IHÉS **82** (1995), 5–96.
- [13] A. J. de Jong, *Homomorphisms of Barsotti-Tate groups and crystals in positive characteristic*, Invent. Math. **134** (1998), 301–333; erratum, *ibid.* **138** (1999), 225.
- [14] P. Deligne, *La Conjecture de Weil, II*, Publ. Math. IHÉS **52** (1980), 138–252.
- [15] P. Deligne and J. Milne, *Tannakian Categories*, Hodge Cycles, Motives, and Shimura Varieties, LNM **900**, Springer-Verlag, New York 1982, pp. 101–228.
- [16] H. Esnault, P.-H. Hai, and X. Sun, *On Nori's fundamental group scheme*, Geometry and Dynamics of Groups and Spaces, Progress in Mathematics, vol. 265, Birkhäuser, 2007, pp. 377–398.
- [17] J.-T. Étesse and B. le Stum, *Fonctions  $L$  associées aux  $F$ -isocristaux surconvergents, I. Interprétation cohomologique*, Math. Ann. **296** (1993), 557–576.
- [18] J.-T. Étesse, *Descente étale des  $F$ -isocristaux surconvergents et rationalité des fonctions  $L$  de schémas abéliens*, Ann. Sci. École Norm. Sup., **35** (2002), 575–603.
- [19] G. Faltings, *Endlichkeitssätze für abelsche Varietäten über Zahlkörpern*, Invent. Math. **73** (1983), 349–366.
- [20] G. Faltings, *Some historical notes, Chapter I*, Arithmetic Geometry, G. Cornell, J.H. Silverman (eds.), Springer Verlag 1986.
- [21] W. Fulton, *Rational equivalence on singular varieties*, Publ. Math. IHÉS **45** (1975), 147–167.
- [22] U. Hartl and A. Pál, *Crystalline Chebotarëv density theorems*, preprint, (2015).
- [23] K. Kato and F. Trihan, *On the conjectures of Birch and Swinnerton-Dyer in characteristic  $p > 0$* , Invent. Math. **153** (2003), 537–592.
- [24] N. Katz, and W. Messing, *Some consequences of the Riemann hypothesis for varieties over finite fields*, Invent. Math. **23** (1974), 73–77.
- [25] N. Katz, *Slope filtration of  $F$ -crystals*, Journées de Géométrie Algébrique de Rennes (Rennes, 1978), Vol. I, pp. 113–163, Astérisque 63, Soc. Math. France, Paris 1979.
- [26] K. Kedlaya, *A  $p$ -adic local monodromy theorem*, Ann. Math. **160** (2004), 93–184.
- [27] K. Kedlaya, *Full faithfulness for overconvergent  $F$ -isocrystals*, Geometric Aspects of Dwork Theory (Volume II), Adolphson et al (eds.), de Gruyter, Berlin, 2004, pp. 819–835.
- [28] K. Kedlaya, *Finiteness of rigid cohomology with coefficients*, Duke Math. J. **134** (2006), 15–97.
- [29] K. Kedlaya, *Fourier transforms and  $p$ -adic "Weil II"*, Compos. Math. **142** (2006), 1426–1450.
- [30] K. Kedlaya, *Semistable reduction for overconvergent  $F$ -isocrystals. I. Unipotence and logarithmic extensions*, Compos. Math. **143** (2007), 1164–1212.
- [31] K. Kedlaya,  *$p$ -adic differential equations*, Cambridge studies in advanced mathematics **125**, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, (2010).
- [32] M. Larsen and R. Pink, *Determining representations from invariant dimensions*, Invent. Math. **102** (1990) 377–398.
- [33] M. Larsen and R. Pink, *On  $\ell$ -independence of algebraic monodromy groups in compatible systems of representations*, Invent. Math. **107** (1992) 603–636.
- [34] M. Larsen and R. Pink, *Abelian varieties,  $l$ -adic representations, and  $l$ -independence*, Math. Ann. **302** (1995), 561–579.
- [35] C. Lazda, *Incarnations of Berthelot's conjecture*, submitted, (2015).
- [36] B. Le Stum, *Rigid cohomology*, Cambridge Tracts in Mathematics, **172**, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, (2007).
- [37] A. Marmora, *Facteur epsilon  $p$ -adiques*, Compos. Math. **144** (2008), 439–483.

- [38] T. Matsusaka, *The criteria for algebraic equivalence and the torsion group*, American Journal of Mathematics **79** (1957), 53–66.
- [39] D. Petrequin, *Classes de Chern et classes de cycles en cohomologie rigide*, Bull. Soc. Math. France **131** (2003), 59–121.
- [40] R. Ree, *Commutators in semi-simple algebraic groups*, Proceedings of the American Mathematical Society **15** (1964), 457–460.
- [41] J.-P. Serre, *Abelian  $l$ -adic representations and elliptic curves*, W.A. Benjamin, Inc, New York (1968).
- [42] J. Tate, *Endomorphisms of abelian varieties over finite fields*, Invent. Math. **2** (1966), 134–144.
- [43] J. Tate, *Conjectures on algebraic cycles in  $l$ -adic cohomology*, in *Motives, Proceedings of the summer research conference on motives*, American Mathematical Society, 1994, pp. 71–83.
- [44] F. Trihan, *A note on semistable Barsotti-Tate groups*, J. Math. Sci. Univ. Tokyo **15** (2008), 411–425.
- [45] N. Tsuzuki, *Morphisms of  $F$ -isocrystals and the finite monodromy theorem for unit-root  $F$ -isocrystals*, Duke Math. J. **111** (2002), 385–418.
- [46] V. Voevodsky, *A nilpotence theorem for cycles algebraically equivalent to zero*, Internat. Math. Res. Notices 1995, no. 4, 187–198.
- [47] J.G. Zarhin, *Isogenies of abelian varieties over fields of finite characteristics*, Math. USSR Sbornik **24** (1974), 451–461.
- [48] J.G. Zarhin, *A remark on endomorphisms of abelian varieties over function fields of finite characteristics*, Math. USSR Izv. **8** (1974), 477–480.

DEPARTMENT OF MATHEMATICS, 180 QUEEN'S GATE, IMPERIAL COLLEGE, LONDON, SW7 2AZ,  
UNITED KINGDOM

*E-mail address:* a.pal@imperial.ac.uk